# Growth of Sobolev norms in the cubic defocusing nonlinear Schrödinger equation 

Received May 17, 2012 and in revised form March 25, 2013


#### Abstract

We consider the cubic defocusing nonlinear Schrödinger equation on the two-dimensional torus. Fix $s>1$. Recently Colliander, Keel, Staffilani, Tao and Takaoka proved the existence of solutions with $s$-Sobolev norm growing in time.

We establish the existence of solutions with polynomial time estimates. More exactly, there is $c>0$ such that for any $\mathcal{K} \gg 1$ we find a solution $u$ and a time $T$ such that $\|u(T)\|_{H^{s}} \geq$ $\mathcal{K}\|u(0)\|_{H^{s}}$. Moreover, the time $T$ satisfies the polynomial bound $0<T<\mathcal{K}^{C}$.


Keywords. Hamiltonian partial differential equations, nonlinear Schrödinger equation, transfer of energy, growth of Sobolev norms, normal forms of Hamiltonian fixed points

## Contents

1. Introduction . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 72
2. Main ideas and structure of the proof . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 76
2.1. Features of the model . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 76
2.2. Dynamics close to the periodic orbits: a heuristic model . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 79
2.3. Outline of the proof . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 83
2.4. Major ingredients of the proof . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 84
3. The three key theorems . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 85
4. The finite-dimensional model: proof of Theorem 3 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 93
4.1. Symplectic reduction and diagonalization . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 94
4.2. The iterative theorem . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 98
4.3. Structure of the proof of the Iterative Theorem 5 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 102
5. The Hyperbolic Toy Model . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 105
5.1. Finitely smooth polynomial normal forms of vector fields in near a saddle point . . 106
5.2. The local map for the Hyperbolic Toy Model in the normal form variables . . . . . 107
6. The local map: proof of Lemma 4.7 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 115
6.1. Proof of Lemma 6.4 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 120
7. The global map: proof of Lemma 4.8 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 125
7.1. Proof of Proposition 7.3 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 129

Appendix A. Proof of Normal Form Theorem 2 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 133
Appendix B. Proof of Approximation Theorem 4 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 136
Appendix C. A result for small initial Sobolev norm . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 141
Appendix D. Notation . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 145
References . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 146
M. Guardia, V. Kaloshin: Department of Mathematics, University of Maryland,

Mathematics Building, College Park, MD 20742-4015, USA;
e-mail: marcel.guardia@upc.edu, vadim.kaloshin@gmail.com
Mathematics Subject Classification (2010): 35Q55, 37K55, 37K60

## 1. Introduction

Let us consider the periodic cubic defocusing nonlinear Schrödinger equation (NLS),

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
-i \partial_{t} u+\Delta u=|u|^{2} u,  \tag{1.1}\\
u(0, x)=u_{0}(x),
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $x \in \mathbb{T}^{2}=\mathbb{R}^{2} /(2 \pi \mathbb{Z})^{2}, t \in \mathbb{R}$ and $u: \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{T}^{2} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$.
The solutions of equation (1.1) conserve two quantities: the Hamiltonian

$$
E[u](t)=\int_{\mathbb{T}^{2}}\left(\frac{1}{2}|\nabla u|^{2}+\frac{1}{4}|u|^{4}\right) d x(t)
$$

and the mass

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{M}[u](t)=\int_{\mathbb{T}^{2}}|u|^{2} d x(t)=\int_{\mathbb{T}^{2}}|u|^{2} d x(0), \tag{1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is just the square of the $L^{2}$-norm of the solution, for any $t>0$. It is useful to study the solutions $u(t)$ of (1.1) in a family of Sobolev spaces $H^{s}$ with the corresponding $H^{s}$-norms

$$
\|u(t)\|_{H^{s}\left(\mathbb{T}^{2}\right)}:=\|u(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{s}\left(\mathbb{T}^{2}\right)}:=\left(\sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\langle n\rangle^{2 s}|\hat{u}(t, n)|^{2}\right)^{1 / 2}
$$

where $\langle n\rangle=\left(1+|n|^{2}\right)^{1 / 2}$ and

$$
\hat{u}(t, n):=\int_{\mathbb{T}^{2}} u(t, x) e^{-i n \cdot x} d x
$$

The local-in-time well-posedness for any $u_{0} \in H^{s}\left(\mathbb{T}^{2}\right), s>0$, was proven by Bourgain [Bou93]. This, along with the two conservation laws, implies the existence of a smooth solution (1.1) for all time. It follows from the conservation of energy $E[u](t)$ that the $H^{1}$ norm of any solution of (1.1) is uniformly bounded. Our main goal is to look for solutions whose higher Sobolev norms $\|u(t)\|_{H^{s}\left(\mathbb{T}^{2}\right)}, s>1$, can grow in time.

If the $H^{s}$-norm can grow indefinitely for some given $s>1$, while the $H^{1}$-norm stays bounded, then we have solutions which initially oscillate only on scales comparable to the spatial period and eventually oscillate on arbitrarily small scales. To see that, compare these norms. The only possibility for $H^{s}$ to grow indefinitely is that the energy of a solution of (1.1) can penetrate to higher and higher Fourier modes.

On the 1-dimensional torus, equation (1.1) is completely integrable due to the famous result of Zakharov-Shabat [ZS71] (see also [GKP12]). As a corollary, $\|u(t)\|_{H^{s}\left(\mathbb{T}^{1}\right)} \leq$ $C\|u(0)\|_{H^{s}\left(\mathbb{T}^{1}\right)}, s \geq 1$, for all $t>0$. If one replaces the nonlinearity $|u|^{2} u=\partial_{\bar{u}} P\left(|u|^{2}\right)$ in (1.1) with a more general polynomial, then Bourgain [Bou96] and Staffilani [Sta97a] proved at most polynomial growth of Sobolev norms. Namely, for some $C>0$ we have

$$
\|u(t)\|_{H^{s}} \leq t^{C(s-1)}\|u(0)\|_{H^{s}} \quad \text { for } t \rightarrow \infty
$$

In [Bou00a] Bourgain applied a version of Nekhoroshev theory. He proved that for a 1-dimensional NLS with a polynomial nonlinearity $P\left(|u|^{2}\right)$ satisfying $P(0)=P^{\prime}(0)=$ $P^{\prime \prime}(0)=0$ for $s$ large and a typical initial data $u(0) \in H^{s}(\mathbb{T})$ of small size $\varepsilon$, i.e. $\|u(0)\| \leq \varepsilon$ we have

$$
\sup _{|t|<T}\|u(t)\|_{H^{s}} \leq C \varepsilon
$$

where $T \leq \varepsilon^{-A}$ with $A=A(s) \rightarrow 0$ as $s \rightarrow \infty$. This is an indication of absence of polynomial growth and motivated Bourgain [Bou00b] to pose the following question:

Are there solutions in dimension 2 or higher with unbounded growth of $H^{s}$-norm for $s>1$ ?

Moreover, he conjectured that in case this is true, the growth should be subpolynomial in time, that is,

$$
\|u(t)\|_{H^{s}} \ll t^{\varepsilon}\|u(0)\|_{H^{s}} \quad \text { for } t \rightarrow \infty, \text { for all } \varepsilon>0
$$

There are several papers obtaining improved polynomial upper bounds for the growth of Sobolev norms for equation (1.1) and also generalizing these results to other nonlinear Schrödinger equations either on $\mathbb{R}$, or $\mathbb{R}^{2}$, or on compact manifolds [Sta97b, CDKS01, Bou04, Zho08, CW10, Soh11a, CKO12]. Similar results have been obtained for the wave equation [Bou96] and for the Hartree equation [Soh11b, Soh12].

All of the cited above papers give upper bounds of the growth but do not obtain orbits which undergo growth. Indeed, there are few results obtaining such orbits. In [Bou96], Bourgain constructs orbits with unbounded growth of the Sobolev norms for the wave equation with a cubic nonlinearity but with a spectrally defined Laplacian. In [GG10, Poc11], growth of Sobolev norms is shown for the Szegö equation, and in [Poc13] for a certain nonlinear wave equation.

Concerning the nonlinear Schrödinger equation, Kuksin [Kuk97b] (see related works [Kuk95, Kuk96, Kuk97a, Kuk99]) studied the growth of Sobolev norms but for the equation

$$
-i \dot{w}=-\delta \Delta w+|w|^{2 p} w, \quad \delta \ll 1, p \geq 1
$$

He obtained solutions whose Sobolev norms grow as an inverse power of $\delta$. Note that $u_{\delta}(t, x)=\delta^{-1 / 2} w\left(\delta^{-1} t, x\right)$ is a solution of (1.1). Therefore, the solutions he obtains correspond to orbits of equation (1.1) with large initial data. The present paper is closely related to $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$. In that paper, it was shown that for any $s>1$ the $H^{s}$-norm can grow by any predetermined factor. The initial data there are not required to be large as in [Kuk97b], but rather have a small initial $H^{s}$-norm with $s>1$. Essentially using the construction from $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$ we not only construct solutions with similar properties, but also estimate their speed of diffusion.

The main result of this paper is
Theorem 1. Let $s>1$. Then there exists $c>0$ with the following property: for any large $\mathcal{K} \gg 1$ there exists a global solution $u(t, x)$ of (1.1) and a time $T$ satisfying $0<T \leq \mathcal{K}^{c}$ such that

$$
\|u(T)\|_{H^{s}} \geq \mathcal{K}\|u(0)\|_{H^{s}}
$$

Moreover, this solution can be chosen to satisfy

$$
\|u(0)\|_{L^{2}} \leq \mathcal{K}^{-(s-1) c / 4+2 /(s-1)} .
$$

Note that Theorem 1 does not contradict Bourgain's conjecture about subpolynomial growth. Indeed, Theorem 1 only obtains solutions with arbitrarily large but finite growth in Sobolev norms whereas Bourgain's conjecture refers to unbounded growth.

Remark 1.1. Even if Theorem 1 is stated for (1.1) on the two-torus, it can be applied to the $d$-dimensional torus with $d \geq 2$, since the solution we obtain is also a solution for equation (1.1) on $\mathbb{T}^{d}$ after setting all the other harmonics to zero.

Remark 1.2. In fact, we can obtain more detailed information about the distribution of the Sobolev norm of the solution $u(T)$ from Theorem 1 among its Fourier modes. More precisely, we can ensure that there exist $n_{1}, n_{2} \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}$ such that

$$
\|u(T)\|_{H^{s}}^{2} \geq\left|n_{1}\right|^{2 s}\left|u_{n_{1}}(T)\right|^{2}+\left|n_{2}\right|^{2 s}\left|u_{n_{2}}(T)\right|^{2} \geq \mathcal{K}^{2}\|u(0)\|_{H^{s}}^{2}
$$

That is, when $t=T$ the Sobolev norm is essentially localized on two Fourier coefficients.
Remark 1.3. Using a more careful analysis we can establish existence of solutions whose Sobolev norms are lower bounded for each time $t \in[1, T]$. Namely,

$$
\ln \|u(t)\|_{H^{s}} \geq \frac{t \ln \mathcal{K}}{\mathcal{K}^{c}}+\ln \|u(0)\|_{H^{s}}
$$

The solutions we construct approximate certain solutions of a finite-dimensional Toy Model (see (3.12)). The Toy Problem solutions that we use are sketched in Figure 1. Notice also that our solutions during the time interval $[0, T]$ have two regimes:

- transition from one periodic solution to another one (which correspond in Figure 1 to intersections between planes),
- long excursion along stable and unstable manifolds of a periodic orbit of a certain reduced system (travel through the planes).

It turns out that during the first transition Sobolev norms grow monotonically, while during the second Sobolev norms stay practically constant.

Remark 1.4. Our solutions differ from solutions studied in $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$ in a substantial way. If one takes into account the information about the dynamics of the already mentioned Toy Model (3.12) contained in [CKS $\left.{ }^{+} 10\right]$ supplied with the theory of normal forms and a beautiful trick of Shilnikov [Šil67], then it is possible to compute certain "local maps" close to some critical points and the associated diffusion time. It turns out that the diffusion time is superexponential in $\mathcal{K}$, namely, it grows as $C^{\mathcal{K}^{\alpha}}$ for some $C>0$ and $\alpha \geq 2$ (see Section 2.2 for more details).

Even equipped with the aforementioned dynamical techniques, in order to obtain polynomial diffusion time we need to achieve $\sim \ln \mathcal{K}$ cancelations in the Toy Model solutions. These cancelations are explained in Section 2.2 on a heuristic level and then worked out in Sections 5 and 6.

Let us just say here that the Shilnikov trick allows us to study the dynamics in a neighborhood of a certain critical point which is resonant, and therefore not well approximated by its linearization. Thanks to this technique, we have a very precise knowledge of such dynamics, which allows us to impose these very concrete cancelations which make the growth of Sobolev norms faster.

Finally, let us point out that to achieve polynomial growth we need to ensure that the solutions of (1.1) follow certain orbits of the Toy Model closely enough. To this end, we need to use a rather accurate approximation argument which relies on a careful choice of the modes on which the Toy Model is supported and on the precise information about its solutions. This is explained in more detail in Section 2.4 and Appendix B.
In [CKS $\left.{ }^{+} 10\right]$ the initial conditions of solutions with growth of Sobolev norms are chosen with small $\|u(0)\|_{H^{s} .}{ }^{1}$ In our case it is also possible, but leads to slowing down of the time of growth. This fact is explained in Appendix C (see Theorem 7).

The present paper deals with growth of Sobolev norms for a Hamiltonian partial differential equation. We show the existence of unstable solutions. As explained above, there have not been many results showing the existence of such instabilities. In [CE12] a solution of (1.1) with spreading of mass among modes is constructed. Nevertheless the spreading does not lead to growth of Sobolev norms.

As already mentioned, Theorem 1 is weaker than Bourgain's conjecture since the latter requires unbounded growth as time tends to infinity. We want to emphasize that new techniques are needed to attain unbounded growth. Indeed, the orbits we obtain are essentially supported on a finite number of modes and thus can only attain finite growth. It has been suggested that a way to obtain unbounded growth would be to concatenate solutions like those obtained in $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$ and the present paper taking their supports well separated so that, on the one hand, they only weakly interact, and on the other hand, the accumulation of growth leads to unbounded growth as time goes to infinity. Nevertheless, in the present paper we are only able to control the properties of such solutions for a finite time. Therefore, as time tends to infinity, such concatenated solutions may start interacting through long range convolution energy transfers regardless of how far their supports are placed. Thus, as time tends to infinity, it seems rather difficult to keep track of the growth of Sobolev norms, and therefore it is not clear how Bourgain's conjecture can be proved. The only works dealing with unbounded growth are by Z. Hani [Han11, Han12]. He shows unbounded growth for a family of pseudodifferential equations which are a simplification of (1.1) constructed by eliminating from (1.1) precisely some long range convolution terms to overcome the problem just mentioned.

In the past decades there has been a considerable progress in the study of other types of dynamics for Hamiltonian partial differential equations, for instance, concerning the existence of periodic, quasi-periodic or almost-periodic solutions (see e.g. [Rab78, Way90, CW93, KP03, Kuk93, KP96, Ber07, BB11]), in Nekhoroshev type results (see e.g. [Bam97, Bam99]) and normal forms (see e.g. [Bam03, BG06, GIP09, GKP12, PP12]). Of particular interest for the present paper are [Bou98, EK10] since, in those papers, the authors study the existence of quasi-periodic solutions for the nonlinear

[^0]Schrödinger equation on the 2-dimensional torus [Bou98] and on a torus of any dimension [EK10]. Nevertheless, they consider slightly different equations containing a convolution potential.

## 2. Main ideas and structure of the proof

One of the remarkable contributions in $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$ is the formulation of a finite-dimensional Toy Model, which after a certain lift approximates some solutions of (1.1). The Hamiltonian of the Toy Model from [CKS $\left.{ }^{+} 10\right]$ has a specific form. It has a nearest neighbor interaction and is integrable inside a certain family of 4-dimensional planes. In this section we present a class of Hamiltonians with a nearest neighbor interaction to which our method applies. It is specified at the end of Section 2.1.

### 2.1. Features of the model

Write (1.1) as an infinite system of ODEs for the Fourier coefficients of the solutions. It is a Hamiltonian system with Hamiltonian $\mathcal{H}$ (see (3.2)).

## Two-step reduction

- Obtain a normal form of the original Hamiltonian near the origin by removing nonresonant terms (see Theorem 2).
- Use the gauge freedom to remove the linear and some nonlinear terms (see (3.7)).

The Toy Model. Select a finite subset $\Lambda$ of Fourier coefficients in $\mathbb{Z}^{2}$ so that they can be split into pairwise disjoint generations, $\Lambda=\bigcup_{j=1}^{N} \Lambda_{j}$, and only neighboring generations $\Lambda_{j}$ and $\Lambda_{j+1}$ interact.

This can be done so that the dynamics of each element in each generation is exactly the same as the dynamics of any other member of this generation (see Corollary 3.2). Truncating we are reduced to a complex $N$-dimensional system given by a Hamiltonian

$$
h(b)=\frac{1}{4} \sum_{j=1}^{N}\left|b_{j}\right|^{4}-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=2}^{N-1}\left(b_{j}^{2} \bar{b}_{j-1}^{2}+\bar{b}_{j}^{2} b_{j-1}^{2}\right),
$$

where each $b_{j}$ is complex valued, and the symplectic form is $\Omega=\frac{i}{2} d b_{j} \wedge \bar{b}_{j}$. The system conserves mass $\mathcal{M}(b)=\sum_{j=1}^{N}\left|b_{j}\right|^{2}$. We study the dynamics restricted to mass $\mathcal{M}(b)=1$. Dynamics of this Hamiltonian is called in [CKS $\left.{ }^{+} 10\right]$ the Toy Model and is the focal point of analysis. It is convenient to study this system in real coordinates and identify $\mathbb{C} \cong \mathbb{R}^{2}$.

Notice also that the Hamiltonian $h(b)$ can be viewed as a Hamiltonian on a lattice $\mathbb{Z}$ with nearest neighbor interactions. Our main result relies on the construction of energy transfer from $b_{3} \approx 1, b_{j} \approx 0, j \neq 3$ to $b_{N-1} \approx 1, b_{j} \approx 0, j \neq N-1$ for this Hamiltonian. Construction of a somewhat similar energy transfer for the pendulum lattice is given in [KLS11].


Fig. 1. Planes approximating solutions.

Invariant low-dimensional subspaces. Notice that each 4-dimensional plane

$$
L_{j}=\left\{b_{1}=\cdots=b_{j-1}=b_{j+2}=\cdots=b_{N}=0\right\}
$$

is invariant. Moreover, dynamics in $L_{j}$ is given by a simple Hamiltonian

$$
h_{j}\left(b_{j}, b_{j+1}\right)=\frac{1}{4}\left(\left|b_{j}\right|^{4}+\left|b_{j+1}\right|^{4}\right)-\frac{1}{2}\left(b_{j}^{2} \bar{b}_{j+1}^{2}+\bar{b}_{j}^{2} b_{j+1}^{2}\right)
$$

Denote $\mathcal{M}_{j}\left(b_{j}, b_{j+1}\right)=\left|b_{j}\right|^{2}+\left|b_{j+1}\right|^{2}$. Both $h_{j}$ and $\mathcal{M}_{j}$ are conserved. The mass $\mathcal{M}_{j}$ is assumed to be 1 .

The solutions constructed stay close to the planes $\left\{L_{j}\right\}_{j=2}^{N-1}$ and go from a neighborhood of one intersection $l_{j}=L_{j} \cap L_{j+1}$ to a neighborhood of the next one $l_{j+1}=$ $L_{j+1} \cap L_{j+2}$ consecutively for $j=3, \ldots, N-2$ (see Figure 1).

To take a closer look at solutions we need to understand dynamics in the planes $L_{j}$.
Integrable dynamics in each plane $L_{j}$. Dynamics in each 2-dimensional plane $L_{j}$ is integrable. Indeed, there are two first integrals $h_{j}$ and $M_{j}$ in involution. By the ArnoldLiouville theorem away from degeneracies the 4-dimensional plane $L_{j}$ is foliated by 2dimensional invariant tori with dynamics smoothly conjugate to a constant flow.

We are interested in two specific periodic orbits: $\theta_{j}$-direction $\left\{\left|b_{j}\right|=1, b_{j+1}=0\right\}$ and $\theta_{j+1}$-direction $\left\{\left|b_{j+1}\right|=1, b_{j}=0\right\}$, and in a family $\left\{\gamma_{j}\right\}$ of heteroclinic orbits connecting the former to the latter. All these orbits can be found explicitly, but their existence can be predicted having $h_{j}$ and $\mathcal{M}_{j}$ satisfying some properties.

- Having the mass $\mathcal{M}_{j}=\left|b_{j}\right|^{2}+\left|b_{j+1}\right|^{2}$ conserved it is natural to expect that the boundary is invariant. The boundary consists of $b_{j}=0$ and $b_{j+1}=0$ (both periodic orbits), which belong to the same $h_{j}$-energy surface.
- One can easily check that both orbits are hyperbolic, i.e. of saddle type.
- Notice that $\left\{h_{j}=1 / 4, \mathcal{M}_{j}=1\right\}$ is a 2-dimensional surface with the boundary given by the periodic orbits $b_{j}=0$ and $b_{j+1}=0$. Away from these periodic orbits it is a locally analytic surface, i.e. the gradients $\nabla h_{j}$ and $\nabla \mathcal{M}_{j}$ are linearly independent.
- Away from the periodic orbits $b_{j}=0$ and $b_{j+1}=0$ the surface $\left\{h_{j}=1 / 4, \mathcal{M}_{j}=1\right\}$ consists of stable and unstable 2-dimensional manifolds. Unless the periodic orbits $b_{j}=0$ and $b_{j+1}=0$ on $\left\{h_{j}=1 / 4, \mathcal{M}_{j}=1\right\}$ are separated by a degenerate periodic orbit, they have to be connected by these manifolds.
- Now we verify that there does not exist such a degenerate periodic orbit. Moreover, we find explicitly the family of connecting heteroclinic orbits. It turns out that these explicit formulae are not used in our proof.
Write in polar coordinates $b_{k}=\sqrt{r_{k}} e^{i \theta_{k}}, k=j, j+1$. The mass conservation becomes $\mathcal{M}_{j}(b)=r_{j}+r_{j+1}$, the symplectic form $\Omega=\frac{1}{2} d r_{j} \wedge d \theta_{j}$ and the Hamiltonian

$$
\left.h_{j}\left(\sqrt{r_{j}} e^{i \theta_{j}}, \sqrt{r_{j+1}} e^{i \theta_{j+1}}\right)=\frac{1}{4}\left[r_{j}^{2}+r_{j+1}^{2}+4 r_{j} r_{j+1} \cos 2\left(\theta_{j}-\theta_{j+1}\right)\right)\right] .
$$

Then the equations of motion are

$$
\begin{aligned}
\dot{\theta}_{j} & =r_{j}-2 r_{j+1} \cos 2\left(\theta_{j}-\theta_{j+1}\right), & \dot{r}_{j} & =4 r_{j} r_{j+1} \sin 2\left(\theta_{j}-\theta_{j+1}\right) \\
\dot{\theta}_{j+1} & =r_{j+1}-2 r_{j} \cos 2\left(\theta_{j}-\theta_{j+1}\right), & \dot{r}_{j+1} & =-4 r_{j} r_{j+1} \sin 2\left(\theta_{j}-\theta_{j+1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

For the energy surface $h_{j}=1 / 4$ we have:

- Two families of periodic solutions $\left\{\left(\theta_{j}, \theta_{j+1}, r_{j}, r_{j+1}\right): r_{j}=0\right\}$ and $\left\{\left(\theta_{j}, \theta_{j+1}, r_{j}, r_{j+1}\right)\right.$ : $\left.r_{j+1}=0\right\}$.
- Each family has two special solutions: $2\left(\theta_{j}-\theta_{j+1}\right)$ equals either $2 \pi / 3$ or $4 \pi / 3$. Both planes are invariant: $\frac{d}{d t}\left(\theta_{j}-\theta_{j+1}\right)=-\left(r_{j}+r_{j+1}\right)\left(1+2 \cos 2\left(\theta_{j}-\theta_{j+1}\right)\right)=0$. Denote $\mathbb{T}_{j}=\left\{2\left(\theta_{j}-\theta_{j+1}\right)=2 \pi / 3(\bmod 2 \pi), r_{j}=0\right\}$.
- On $\mathcal{M}_{j}=1, h_{j}=\frac{1}{4}, \theta_{j}-\theta_{j+1}=\frac{2 \pi}{3}$ we have $\dot{r}_{j}=r_{j} r_{j+1}=-\dot{r}_{j+1}$. Thus, there is a heteroclinic orbit $\gamma_{j}$ connecting $\mathbb{T}_{j}$ to the second family $r_{j+1}=0$.


Fig. 2. Heteroclinic orbits.

Now we can be more specific about the location of the orbits:
The solutions constructed go from one periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{2}$ to the next $\mathbb{T}_{3}$ along $\gamma_{2}$, then from $\mathbb{T}_{3}$ to $\mathbb{T}_{4}$ along $\gamma_{3}$ and so on for $j=4, \ldots, N-2$.

In view of the above discussion we have the following description:

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\rightsquigarrow \rightsquigarrow \mathbb{T}_{j} \rightsquigarrow & \rightsquigarrow \gamma_{j} \rightsquigarrow & \rightsquigarrow \mathbb{T}_{j+1} \rightsquigarrow \\
& \dot{\theta}_{i} \approx 0,|i-j|>1 & \theta_{j}-\theta_{j+1} \approx \pi / 3 \tag{2.2}
\end{array} \quad \dot{\dot{\theta}_{i}} \approx 0,|i-j-1|>1 .
$$

Local behavior of periodic orbits $\mathbb{T}_{j}$. Due to the above analysis, the periodic orbits $\mathbb{T}_{j}$ viewed in $\mathbb{R}^{2 N}$ have at least two expanding and two contracting directions: one pair from the $L_{j-1}$-plane and the other from the $L_{j}$-plane. Due to symmetry of the restricted systems in the $L_{j-1}$-plane and the $L_{j}$-plane these periodic orbits have multiple hyperbolic eigenvalues. The multiplicity turns out to be exactly 2.
Resonant normal forms near $\mathbb{T}_{j}$. The presence of resonance complicates the analysis of the local map since, as formulae (4.37) show, the resonance modifies the local behavior compared to the linear case. To overcome this problem, we use a beautiful trick of Shilnikov [Šil67] and obtain precise information about the local behavior, which is explained in Section 2.2.
Connecting heteroclinic orbits. As we have shown above, there are orbits $\gamma_{j}$ connecting $\mathbb{T}_{j}$ to $\mathbb{T}_{j+1}$ for each $j=3, \ldots, n-2$. We need to analyze the dynamics near those heteroclinic orbits.
Local almost product structure. Once we obtain information about the behavior near $\mathbb{T}_{j}$ 's and near the connecting orbits $\gamma_{j}$, we can describe the dynamics of the Toy Model, as it is close to the direct product of the $N-3$ planes $L_{j}, j=3, \ldots, N-1$.
Properties of the Hamiltonian $h(b)$ used in the proof. As mentioned in the introduction to this section, we do not use the specific form of $h$. Here is the list of the properties we need:

- $h$ has nearest neighbor interaction;
- $h$ has 2-dimensional (complex) invariant planes intersecting transversally;
- there are two first integrals (coming from two conserved quantities: energy and mass);
- some generic properties of $h$ and $\mathcal{M}$.

Growth of Sobolev norms through resonant structures, as happens for the cubic defocusing nonlinear Schrödinger equation, is expected to take place in a large set of Hamiltonian partial differential equations, for instance, in the nonlinear wave equation, the nonlinear quantum harmonic oscillator or the Hartree equation. It is not clear for the authors how the I-team approach can be implemented in such equations to obtain a Toy Model similar to the one considered in $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$ and in the present paper. Nevertheless, we want to emphasize that if a Toy Model for such equations could be obtained, one would not need to have a very precise knowledge of its dynamics but it would suffice that it has the properties just listed.

### 2.2. Dynamics close to the periodic orbits: a heuristic model

One of the crucial steps in analyzing the Toy Model $h(b)$ is the study of the dynamics in a neighborhood of the periodic orbits $\mathbb{T}_{j}$. Namely, we want to analyze how points which lie


Fig. 3. Local map
close to their stable invariant manifold evolve under the flow until reaching points close to their unstable manifold (see Figure 3). As explained above, these periodic orbits are of mixed type (four eigenvalues are hyperbolic and the rest are elliptic). Since in each plane $L_{j}$ dynamics is the same as explained in the previous section, the hyperbolic eigenvalues have multiplicity two, and therefore are equal to $\lambda, \lambda,-\lambda,-\lambda$ for some $\lambda>0$. Since this section serves an expository purpose, we let $\lambda=1$ and set the elliptic modes to zero. ${ }^{2}$

Essentially the study has three steps:

- Using conservation of $\mathcal{M}$, make a symplectic reduction so the periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{j}$ becomes a fixed point.
- Perform a normal form procedure to reduce the size of the higher order non-resonant terms.
- Analyze the dynamics of the new vector field and achieve a cancelation for a local map.

The first step is performed in Section 4.1. It leads to a Hamiltonian of two degrees of freedom of the form

$$
H(p, q)=p_{1} q_{1}+p_{2} q_{2}+H_{4}(q, p)
$$

where $H_{4}$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree four. The variables ( $p_{1}, q_{1}$ ) correspond to the variable $b_{j-1}$ after diagonalizing the saddle, and the variables ( $q_{2}, p_{2}$ ) correspond to $b_{j+1}$.

Fix a small $\sigma>0$. To study the local dynamics, it suffices to analyze a map from a section $\Sigma_{-}=\left\{q_{1}=\sigma,\left|p_{1}\right|,\left|q_{2}\right|,\left|p_{2}\right| \ll \sigma\right\}$ to a section $\Sigma_{+}=\left\{p_{2}=\sigma,\left|p_{1}\right|,\left|q_{1}\right|,\left|q_{2}\right| \ll \sigma\right\}$ (see Figure 3). Using rescaling assume $\sigma=1$. This only changes time by a fixed factor.

Since we are in a neighborhood of the origin, one would expect that the dynamics of the system associated to this Hamiltonian is well approximated by its first order, that is,

[^1]by a linear equation. Then the solutions are just given by
$$
p_{1}(t)=p_{1}^{0} e^{t}, \quad q_{1}(t)=q_{1}^{0} e^{-t}, \quad p_{2}(t)=p_{2}^{0} e^{t}, \quad q_{2}(t)=q_{2}^{0} e^{-t}
$$
and then the local map $\mathcal{B}_{0}$ from $U \subset \Sigma_{-}$to $\Sigma_{+}$for this system sends points
$$
\left(p_{1}^{0}, q_{1}^{0}, p_{2}^{0}, q_{2}^{0}\right) \sim(\delta, 1, \sqrt{\delta}, \sqrt{\delta}) \quad \text { to } \quad \mathcal{B}_{0}\left(p_{1}^{0}, q_{1}^{0}, p_{2}^{0}, q_{2}^{0}\right) \sim(\sqrt{\delta}, \sqrt{\delta}, 1, \delta)
$$
where $0<\delta \ll 1$. Moreover, the travel time of orbits under this map is always $T=$ $-\ln \sqrt{\delta}+\mathcal{O}(1)$.

We will see that the image point changes substantially when we add $H_{4}$ to the system, due to both resonant and nonresonant terms. To exemplify this, we consider a simplified model which in fact contains all the difficulties that the true model has,

$$
\begin{equation*}
H(p, q)=p_{1} q_{1}+p_{2} q_{2}+q_{1}^{2} p_{2}^{2}+p_{1}^{2} p_{2}^{2} \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since the term $p_{1}^{2} p_{2}^{2}$ is nonresonant, we first perform one step of normal form $(x, y)=$ $\Psi(p, q)$ (see Section 5 for details). It can be easily seen that the change $\Psi$ is of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi(p, q)=\left(p_{1}, q_{1}+\mathcal{O}\left(p_{1} p_{2}^{2}\right), p_{2}, q_{2}+\mathcal{O}\left(p_{1}^{2} p_{2}\right)\right) \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

and therefore keeps the size of initial points of the form

$$
\left(p_{1}^{0}, q_{1}^{0}, p_{2}^{0}, q_{2}^{0}\right) \sim(\delta, 1, \sqrt{\delta}, \sqrt{\delta})
$$

That is, $\left(x^{0}, y^{0}\right)=\Psi\left(p^{0}, q^{0}\right)$ satisfies

$$
\left(x_{1}^{0}, y_{1}^{0}, x_{2}^{0}, y_{2}^{0}\right) \sim(\delta, 1, \sqrt{\delta}, \sqrt{\delta})
$$

The change to normal form leads to a Hamiltonian system of the form

$$
H^{\prime}(x, y)=x_{1} y_{1}+x_{2} y_{2}+y_{1}^{2} x_{2}^{2}+\text { higher order terms }
$$

Drop the higher order terms. Then, the solutions of the system associated to this Hamiltonian can be computed explicitly and are given by

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
x_{1}=x_{1}^{0} e^{t}+2 y_{1}^{0}\left(x_{2}^{0}\right)^{2} t e^{t}=\left(x_{1}^{0}+2 y_{1}^{0}\left(x_{2}^{0}\right)^{2} t\right) e^{t}, & x_{2}=x_{2}^{0} e^{t} \\
y_{1}=y_{1}^{0} e^{-t}, & y_{2}=y_{2}^{0} e^{-t}-2\left(y_{1}^{0}\right)^{2} x_{2}^{0} t e^{t}
\end{array}
$$

Thus, since the travel time is $t=-\ln \sqrt{\delta}+\mathcal{O}(1)$, it is clear that the nonlinear terms are bigger than the linear ones, leading to an image point of the form

$$
\left(x_{1}^{f}, y_{1}^{f}, x_{2}^{f}, y_{2}^{f}\right) \sim(\sqrt{\delta} \ln (1 / \delta), \sqrt{\delta}, 1, \delta \ln (1 / \delta))
$$

Using (2.4), in the original variables the image point of the map $\mathcal{B}_{1}$ associated to the Hamiltonian $H$ is of the form

$$
\mathcal{B}_{1}\left(p_{1}^{0}, q_{1}^{0}, p_{2}^{0}, q_{2}^{0}\right) \sim\left(\sqrt{\delta} \ln (1 / \delta), \sqrt{\delta}, 1, \delta \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta)\right)
$$

We emphasize that the presence of these logarithmic terms is a serious problem we need to deal with. Recall that we need to travel through $N-3$ saddles ( $\mathbb{T}_{3} \rightsquigarrow \mathbb{T}_{4} \rightsquigarrow \ldots \rightsquigarrow$ $\mathbb{T}_{N-1}$ ). Roughly speaking, this implies that we need to compose $N-4$ local maps. Thanks to the symmetries, at each saddle we can consider a system of coordinates such that the dynamics is essentially given by a Hamiltonian of the form (2.3). Moreover, since at each local map we gain some logarithms, the initial points of the local map associated to the $j$ th saddle are of the form

$$
\left(p_{1}^{0}, q_{1}^{0}, p_{2}^{0}, q_{2}^{0}\right) \sim\left(\delta \ln ^{2^{j-1}}(1 / \delta), 1, \sqrt{\delta}, \sqrt{\delta}\right)
$$

which, thanks to (2.4), in the normal form variables satisfy

$$
\left(x_{1}^{0}, y_{1}^{0}, x_{2}^{0}, y_{2}^{0}\right) \sim\left(\delta \ln ^{2^{j-1}}(1 / \delta), 1, \sqrt{\delta}, \sqrt{\delta}\right)
$$

Then, proceeding as before, these points are mapped to points of the form

$$
\left(x_{1}^{f}, y_{1}^{f}, x_{2}^{f}, y_{2}^{f}\right) \sim\left(\sqrt{\delta} \ln ^{2^{j-1}}(1 / \delta), \delta^{1 / 2}, 1, \delta \ln (1 / \delta)\right)
$$

which in the original variables read

$$
\mathcal{B}_{1}\left(p_{1}^{0}, q_{1}^{0}, p_{2}^{0}, q_{2}^{0}\right) \sim\left(\sqrt{\delta} \ln ^{2^{j-1}}(1 / \delta), \sqrt{\delta}, 1, \delta \ln ^{2^{j}}(1 / \delta)\right)
$$

That is, the number of logarithms doubles at each step and thus grows exponentially. This accumulation of logarithmic terms leads to very bad estimates. Indeed, to keep track of the orbit after $N-3$ local maps, we would need that

$$
\delta \ln ^{2^{N-3}}(1 / \delta) \ll 1
$$

Therefore, we would need to choose $\delta$ extremely small with respect to $N$.
For example, if $\delta \gtrsim C^{-\mathcal{K}^{2 a}} \sim C^{-2^{a N}}$ for some $C>0$ independent of $N$, then the above expression gives

$$
C^{-2^{a N}}\left(2^{a N} \ln C\right)^{2^{N-3}} \gg 1 \quad \text { for } a \leq 1 .
$$

In this case, the constant $\lambda$ appearing in Theorem 4 would need to satisfy $\lambda \sim \delta^{-b}$ for some $b>0$ independent of $N$. As a result, Theorem 3 would give a diffusion time $T \sim \lambda^{2} \mathbb{K} \gamma N \ln (1 / \delta) \gtrsim C^{\mathcal{K}^{2}}$ (see formula (3.16)). Thus, choosing such a small $\delta$ would lead to very bad estimates for the diffusion time of Sobolev norms, as we pointed out in Remark 1.4.

To overcome this problem, we slightly modify the initial conditions. Notice that if we choose $x_{1}^{0}$ such that

$$
x_{1}^{0}-2 y_{1}^{0}\left(x_{2}^{0}\right)^{2} \ln \sqrt{\delta}=0
$$

we find that at the end $x_{1}^{f} \sim \sqrt{\delta}$ and thus we avoid the logarithmic term. This cancelation will be crucial in our proof. If we restrict $x_{1}^{0}$ to this set, we are taking $x_{1}^{0} \sim \delta \ln (1 / \delta)$ and therefore we will be sending points

$$
\left(x_{1}^{0}, y_{1}^{0}, x_{2}^{0}, y_{2}^{0}\right) \sim(\delta \ln (1 / \delta), 1, \sqrt{\delta}, \sqrt{\delta})
$$

to

$$
\left(x_{1}^{f}, y_{1}^{f}, x_{2}^{f}, y_{2}^{f}\right) \sim(\sqrt{\delta}, \sqrt{\delta}, 1, \delta \ln (1 / \delta))
$$

The map will keep the same form expressed in the original variables, and therefore we will avoid having increasing separation from the invariant manifolds.

Note that the true Toy Model is not integrable, and therefore we do not have a closed form for the flow near the saddle. Therefore, we need a very precise knowledge of the first orders of such dynamics so that we can impose analogous cancelations to the ones just explained to avoid deviation from the invariant manifolds. This knowledge is obtained by using the techniques developed by Shilnikov [Šil67] to analyze the local dynamics close to saddles which are resonant and therefore not well approximated by linearization. Roughly speaking, for these systems, the linear part is not a good first order and if one considers the full nonlinear part, the system is not integrable and therefore hard to analyze. Thus, one considers an intermediate first order, incorporating only some nonlinear terms. In this way, one obtains a good first order for this system, simple enough to be analyzed. Therefore, one can obtain a precise enough knowledge of the dynamics around saddle to impose the explained cancelations. This is explained in more detail in Section 5, more precisely, in Lemma 5.2 and Remark 5.3.

### 2.3. Outline of the proof

- Find symplectic coordinates near the origin in $\ell^{1}$, where the original Hamiltonian $\mathcal{H}$ simplifies (see Theorem 2). Namely, $\mathcal{H} \circ \Gamma=\mathcal{D}+\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}+\mathcal{R}$, where $\mathcal{D}$ is a quadratic Hamiltonian, $\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}$ is of degree four and only contains resonant terms, and $\mathcal{R}$ is smaller.
- The dynamics of $\mathcal{D}+\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}$ has invariant finite-dimensional subspaces, which give rise to a simpler (but not simple!) finite-dimensional Hamiltonian $h(b)$ given by (3.13). In the terminology of $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$ this Hamiltonian defines the Toy Model. In Theorem 3 we obtain orbits of the Toy Model which have transfer of energy.
- We show that there are solutions of the system associated to $\mathcal{H}$ which are close to those of the Toy Model for long enough time (Theorem 4). These orbits undergo the desired growth of the Sobolev norm.
- The proof of Theorem 3 occupies most of the paper. The proofs of Theorems 2 and 4 are deferred to Appendices A and B respectively. Now we describe the plan of the proof of Theorem 3.
- Following $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$ we detect a collection $\left\{\mathbb{T}_{j}\right\}_{j=1}^{N-1}$ of periodic orbits of $h(b)$, defined in (4.2), and heteroclinic orbits $\left\{\gamma_{j}\right\}_{j=1}^{N-2}$ connecting them (see (4.3)).
The whole proof consists in a careful analysis of dynamics near the union of these periodic orbits and their connecting orbits. Our analysis naturally splits into
- local dynamics near periodic orbits $\left\{\mathbb{T}_{j}\right\}_{j=1}^{N-1}$ and
- global dynamics near heteroclinic orbits $\left\{\gamma_{j}\right\}_{j=1}^{N-2}$.
- More formally, Theorem 3 follows from Theorem 5. The latter in turn follows from Lemmas 4.7 and 4.8.
- The Local Lemma 4.7 provides refined information about the local behavior near the periodic orbits $\left\{\mathbb{T}_{j}\right\}_{j}$ with quantitative estimates.
- The Global Lemma 4.8 provides refined information about the local behavior near the heteroclinic orbits from (4.3) with quantitative estimates.
- The proof of the Local Lemma 4.7 consists of several steps. As explained in Section 2.1, the periodic orbits $\left\{\mathbb{T}_{j}\right\}_{j}$ are of mixed type. Namely, in some directions the local behavior is hyperbolic, while in others it is elliptic. It turns out that the closer the orbits under investigation pass to the periodic orbits $\left\{\mathbb{T}_{j}\right\}_{j}$, the more decoupled (direct-product-like) behavior they have.
- In Section 5 we set all the elliptic variables to zero and study the (4-dimensional) Hyperbolic Toy Model.
- In Section 6 we use these results to deal with the full hyperbolic-elliptic system and prove Lemma 4.7.
- In Section 7 we prove the Global Lemma 4.8. As pointed out, this implies Theorem 5, which in turn implies Theorem 3.
- Combining this result with Theorem 2, proved in Appendix A, and Theorem 4, proved in Appendix B, we complete the proof of the main result (Theorem 1).

We summarize this in the following diagram:


### 2.4. Major ingredients of the proof

We summarize here the new set of tools that we apply to the problem compared to [CKS ${ }^{+}$10].

- In Theorem 2, we use a standard normal form (see e.g. [KP96]).
- Theorem 3 requires several new ideas:
- Finitely smooth resonant normal form for hyperbolic saddles [BK94].
- Shilnikov's boundary value problem [Šil67] to study the local behavior close to the periodic orbits $\mathbb{T}_{j}$.
- As explained for the model case in Section 2.2, to control the dynamics of the Toy Model we need a peculiar cancelation (see Section 5).
- To have cancelations at each stage, we need to establish local product structure for the orbits we are interested in (see Definition 4.3).
- Due to the good control of the solutions of the Toy Model, we are able to approximate the solutions of the original systems with the ones of the Toy Model for longer time compared with $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$ (see Theorem 4). To achieve this, we also modify the set $\Lambda$ (see condition $6_{\Lambda}$ ). This modification allows us to slow down the spreading of mass outside $\Lambda$. This is explained in more detail in Appendix B.


## 3. The three key theorems

We start the proof by analyzing the infinite system of equations which describe the behavior of Fourier coefficients. Namely, consider the Fourier series of $u$,

$$
u(t, x)=\sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}} a_{n}(t) e^{i n x}, \quad a_{n}(t):=\hat{u}(t, n)
$$

Then (1.1) becomes an infinite system of equations for $\left\{a_{n}\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}$, given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
-i \dot{a}_{n}=|n|^{2} a_{n}+\sum_{\substack{n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3} \in \mathbb{Z}^{2} \\ n_{1}-n_{2}+n_{3}=n}} a_{n_{1}} \bar{a}_{n_{2}} a_{n_{3}} \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that this equation is Hamiltonian. Indeed, it can be written as

$$
\dot{a}_{n}=2 i \partial_{\bar{a}_{n}} \mathcal{H}(a, \bar{a}),
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{H}(a, \bar{a})=\mathcal{D}(a, \bar{a})+\mathcal{G}(a, \bar{a}) \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\mathcal{D}(a, \bar{a})=\frac{1}{2} \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}|n|^{2}\left|a_{n}\right|^{2}, \quad \mathcal{G}(a, \bar{a})=\frac{1}{4} \sum_{\substack{n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}, n_{4} \in \mathbb{Z}^{2} \\ n_{1}-n_{2}+n_{3}=n_{4}}} a_{n_{1}} \bar{a}_{n_{2}} a_{n_{3}} \bar{a}_{n_{4}} .
$$

We will study equation (3.1) in a family of Banach spaces: all $H^{s}$ Sobolev spaces with $s>1$ as well as the $\ell^{1}$ space. The latter is defined as

$$
\ell^{1}=\left\{a: \mathbb{Z}^{2} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}:\|a\|_{\ell^{1}}=\sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|a_{n}\right|<\infty\right\}
$$

Note that $\ell^{1}$ is a Banach algebra with respect to the convolution product. Namely, if $a, b \in \ell^{1}$ then their convolution product $a * b$, which is defined by

$$
(a * b)_{n}=\sum_{n_{1}+n_{2}=n} a_{n_{1}} b_{n_{2}}
$$

satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|a * b\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq\|a\|_{\ell^{1}}\|b\|_{\ell^{1}} \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Finally, let us point out that the $L^{2}$-norm conservation of (1.1) becomes now conservation of the $\ell^{2}$-norm of $a$, defined as above. Namely, we have $\|a(t)\|_{\ell^{2}}=\|a(0)\|_{\ell^{2}}$ for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$.

We want to study the evolution of certain solutions of equation (3.1), which will be small in the $\ell^{1}$-norm. Now we give an outline of the proof.

The first step is to find out which terms make the biggest contribution to this evolution. To this end, we make one step of the normal form procedure and bound the remainder in the $\ell^{1}$-norm. We consider a small ball centered at the origin,

$$
B(\eta)=\left\{a \in \ell^{1}:\|a\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq \eta\right\}
$$

Theorem 2. There exists $\eta>0$ small enough such that there exists a symplectic change of coordinates $\Gamma: B(\eta) \rightarrow B(2 \eta) \subset \ell^{1}, a=\Gamma(\alpha)$, which takes the Hamiltonian $\mathcal{H}$ in (3.2) into its Birkhoff normal form up to order four, that is,

$$
\mathcal{H} \circ \Gamma=\mathcal{D}+\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}+\mathcal{R}
$$

where $\tilde{\mathcal{G}}$ only contains resonant terms, namely

$$
\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}(\alpha, \bar{\alpha})=\frac{1}{4} \sum_{\substack{n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}, n_{4} \in \mathbb{Z}^{2} \\ n_{1}-n_{2}+n_{3}=n_{4} \\\left|n_{1}\right|^{2}-\left|n_{2}\right|^{2}+\left|n_{3}\right|^{2}=\left|n_{4}\right|^{2}}} \alpha_{n_{1}} \bar{\alpha}_{n_{2}} \alpha_{n_{3}} \bar{\alpha}_{n_{4}}
$$

and $X_{\mathcal{R}}$, the vector field associated to the Hamiltonian $\mathcal{R}$, satisfies

$$
\left\|\mathcal{X}_{\mathcal{R}}\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq \mathcal{O}\left(\|\alpha\|_{\ell^{1}}^{5}\right)
$$

Moreover, the change $\Gamma$ satisfies

$$
\|\Gamma-\operatorname{Id}\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq \mathcal{O}\left(\|\alpha\|_{\ell^{1}}^{3}\right)
$$

The proof of this theorem is postponed to Appendix A.
Once we make one step of the normal form procedure, we have a new vector field

$$
\begin{equation*}
-i \dot{\alpha}_{n}=|n|^{2} \alpha_{n}+\sum_{\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}\right) \in \mathcal{A}_{0}(n)} \alpha_{n_{1}} \bar{\alpha}_{n_{2}} \alpha_{n_{3}}+\partial_{\bar{\alpha}_{n}} \mathcal{R}, \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where
$\mathcal{A}_{0}(n)=\left\{\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}\right) \in\left(\mathbb{Z}^{2}\right)^{3}: n_{1}-n_{2}+n_{3}=n,\left|n_{1}\right|^{2}-\left|n_{2}\right|^{2}+\left|n_{3}\right|^{2}=|n|^{2}\right\}$.
As a first step, we focus on the degree 4 truncation of it, which will give the main contribution to the dynamics. Namely, we consider the Hamiltonian

$$
\mathcal{H}^{\prime}=\mathcal{D}+\widetilde{\mathcal{G}},
$$

which has associated equations

$$
\begin{equation*}
-i \dot{\alpha}_{n}=|n|^{2} \alpha_{n}+\sum_{\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}\right) \in \mathcal{A}_{0}(n)} \alpha_{n_{1}} \bar{\alpha}_{n_{2}} \alpha_{n_{3}} . \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that the $\ell^{2}$-norm of $\alpha$ is a first integral of this system as well as for (3.1) and (3.4). Namely,

$$
\|\alpha(t)\|_{\ell^{2}}=\|\alpha(0)\|_{\ell^{2}} \quad \text { for all } t \in \mathbb{R}
$$

To study the dynamics of $\alpha$ close to the origin (in the $\ell^{1}$-norm) we remove its linear terms using the variation of constants formula. Moreover, we also remove certain cubic terms using the gauge freedom of equation (1.1). To this end, we make the change of coordinates

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha_{n}=\beta_{n} e^{i\left(G+|n|^{2}\right) t}, \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $G \in \mathbb{R}$ is a constant to be determined. The equations for $\beta$ read

$$
-i \dot{\beta}_{n}=-G \beta_{n}+\sum_{\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}\right) \in \mathcal{A}_{0}(n)} \beta_{n_{1}} \bar{\beta}_{n_{2}} \beta_{n_{3}} .
$$

Choosing $G$ properly we can remove certain terms in the sum. Indeed, we split the sum as

$$
\sum_{\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}\right) \in \mathcal{A}_{0}(n)}=\sum_{\substack{\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}\right) \in \mathcal{A}_{0}(n) \\ n_{1}, n_{3} \neq n}}+\sum_{\substack{\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}\right) \in \mathcal{A}_{0}(n) \\ n_{1}=n}}+\sum_{\substack{\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}\right) \in \mathcal{A}_{0}(n) \\ n_{3}=n}}-\sum_{\substack{\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}\right) \in \mathcal{A}_{0}(n) \\ n_{1}=n_{3}=n}} .
$$

The last sum is just one term, which is given by $-\beta_{n}\left|\beta_{n}\right|^{2}$. The second and third sums are in fact single sums and each of them is given by

$$
\beta_{n} \sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\beta_{k}\right|^{2}=\beta_{n}\|\beta\|_{\ell^{2}}^{2}
$$

Recall that both (3.6) and (3.7) preserve the $\ell^{2}$-norm. Therefore, taking $G=2\|\alpha\|_{\ell^{2}}^{2}=$ $2\|\beta\|_{\ell^{2}}^{2}$, we can remove these two terms. Thus, with this choice, we obtain the equation for $\beta$, which reads

$$
\begin{equation*}
-i \dot{\beta}_{n}=-\beta_{n}\left|\beta_{n}\right|^{2}+\sum_{n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3} \in \mathcal{A}(n)} \beta_{n_{1}} \bar{\beta}_{n_{2}} \beta_{n_{3}} \tag{3.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

where
$\mathcal{A}(n)=\left\{\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}\right) \in\left(\mathbb{Z}^{2}\right)^{3}: n_{1}-n_{2}+n_{3}=n,\left|n_{1}\right|^{2}-\left|n_{2}\right|^{2}+\left|n_{3}\right|^{2}=|n|^{2}, n_{1}, n_{3} \neq n\right\}$.
We also define the set of all resonant frequencies as

$$
\mathcal{A}=\left\{\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}, n_{4}\right) \in\left(\mathbb{Z}^{2}\right)^{4}:\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}\right) \in \mathcal{A}\left(n_{4}\right)\right\} .
$$

Note that if $\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}, n_{4}\right) \in \mathcal{A}$, then the four points form a rectangle in $\mathbb{Z}^{2}$ with the vertices ordered cyclically.

We reduce this system to a finite-dimensional one, which corresponds to an invariant finite-dimensional plane. To this end, we consider a set $\Lambda \subset \mathbb{Z}^{2}$ such that the corresponding harmonics do not interact with the harmonics outside of $\Lambda$. Moreover, we obtain a set $\Lambda$ such that the harmonics in $\Lambda$ interact in a very particular way. This set was constructed
in [CKS $\left.{ }^{+} 10\right]$. We now explain its construction and impose an additional condition on $\Lambda$ from [CKS $\left.{ }^{+} 10\right]$.

Fix $N \gg 1$. Following [CKS $\left.{ }^{+} 10\right]$, we define a set $\Lambda \subset \mathbb{Z}^{2}$ consisting of $N$ pairwise disjoint generations:

$$
\Lambda=\Lambda_{1} \cup \cdots \cup \Lambda_{N}
$$

Define a nuclear family to be a rectangle $\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}, n_{4}\right) \in \mathcal{A}$ whose vertices are ordered, such that $n_{1}$ and $n_{3}$ (known as the parents) belong to a generation $\Lambda_{j}$, and $n_{2}$ and $n_{4}$ (known as the children) live in the next generation $\Lambda_{j+1}$. Note that if ( $n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}, n_{4}$ ) is a nuclear family, then so are $\left(n_{1}, n_{4}, n_{3}, n_{2}\right),\left(n_{3}, n_{2}, n_{1}, n_{4}\right)$ and $\left(n_{3}, n_{4}, n_{1}, n_{2}\right)$. These families are called trivial permutations of the family ( $n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}, n_{4}$ ).

The conditions to impose on the set $\Lambda$ are:
$1_{\Lambda}$ (Closure) If $n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3} \in \Lambda$ and $\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}\right) \in \mathcal{A}(n)$, then $n \in \Lambda$. In other words, if three vertices of a rectangle are in $\Lambda$, so is the fourth one.
$2_{\Lambda}$ (Existence and uniqueness of spouse and children) For any $1 \leq j<N$ and $n_{1} \in \Lambda_{j}$, there exists a unique nuclear family ( $n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}, n_{4}$ ) (up to trivial permutations) such that $n_{1}$ is a parent of this family. In particular, each $n_{1} \in \Lambda_{j}$ has a unique spouse $n_{3} \in \Lambda_{j}$ and has two unique children $n_{2}, n_{4} \in \Lambda_{j+1}$ (up to permutation).
$3_{\Lambda}$ (Existence and uniqueness of sibling and parents) For any $1 \leq j<N$ and $n_{2} \in \Lambda_{j+1}$, there exists a unique nuclear family ( $n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}, n_{4}$ ) (up to trivial permutations) such that $n_{2}$ is a child of this family. In particular each $n_{2} \in \Lambda_{j+1}$ has a unique sibling $n_{4} \in \Lambda_{j+1}$ and two unique parents $n_{1}, n_{3} \in \Lambda_{j}$ (up to permutation).
$4_{\Lambda}$ (Nondegeneracy) The sibling of a frequency $n$ is never equal to its spouse.
$5_{\Lambda}$ (Faithfulness) Apart from the nuclear families, $\Lambda$ does not contain any other rectangle.
These are the conditions imposed on $\Lambda$ in $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$. We will impose an additional condition:
$6_{\Lambda}$ (No-spreading condition) Each $n \notin \Lambda$ is a vertex of at most two rectangles having two vertices in $\Lambda$ and two vertices off $\Lambda$.
Proposition 3.1. Let $\mathcal{K} \gg 1$. Then there exists $N \gg 1$ large and a set $\Lambda \subset \mathbb{Z}^{2}$, with

$$
\Lambda=\Lambda_{1} \cup \cdots \cup \Lambda_{N}
$$

which satisfies conditions $1_{\Lambda}-6_{\Lambda}$ and also

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\sum_{n \in \Lambda_{N-1}}|n|^{2 s}}{\sum_{n \in \Lambda_{3}}|n|^{2 s}} \geq \frac{1}{2} 2^{(s-1)(N-4)} \geq \mathcal{K}^{2} . \tag{3.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Moreover, given any $R>0$ (which may depend on $\mathcal{K}$ ), we can ensure that each generation $\Lambda_{j}$ has $2^{N-1}$ disjoint frequencies $n$ satisfying $|n| \geq R$.
The proof of Proposition 2.1 from [CKS $\left.{ }^{+} 10\right]$ applies except for proving that condition $6_{\Lambda}$ is fulfilled, since this condition was not imposed in that paper. In Appendix C, we prove a quantitative version of this proposition and we show that slightly modifying the construction in $\left[C K S^{+} 10\right]$, one can construct a set $\Lambda$ satisfying condition $6_{\Lambda}$.

We use the set $\Lambda$ to obtain a finite-dimensional dynamical system (of high dimension) approximating (3.8). To this end, let us first note that, by property $1_{\Lambda}$, the manifold

$$
M=\left\{\beta \in \mathbb{C}^{\mathbb{Z}^{2}}: \beta_{n}=0 \text { for all } n \notin \Lambda\right\}
$$

is invariant under the flow associated to (3.8) and is finite-dimensional. Indeed, by Proposition 3.1 its dimension is $N 2^{N-1}$. Equation (3.8) restricted to $M$ reads as follows. For each $n \in \Lambda$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
-i \dot{\beta}_{n}=-\beta_{n}\left|\beta_{n}\right|^{2}+2 \beta_{n_{\text {child }}^{1}} \beta_{n_{\text {child }}^{2}} \bar{\beta}_{n_{\text {spouse }}}+2 \beta_{n_{\text {parent }_{1}}} \beta_{n_{\text {parent }}^{2}} \bar{\beta}_{n_{\text {sibling }}} . \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Indeed, the presence of parents, children, and the sibling is guaranteed by $2_{\Lambda}$ and $3_{\Lambda}$. Note that in the first and last generations, the parents and children are set to zero respectively.

The manifold $M$ has a submanifold of considerably lower dimension which is also invariant.

Corollary 3.2 (cf. $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$ ). Consider the subspace

$$
\tilde{M}=\left\{\beta \in M: \beta_{n_{1}}=\beta_{n_{2}} \text { for all } n_{1}, n_{2} \in \Lambda_{j} \text { for some } j\right\}
$$

where all the members of a generation take the same value. Then $\tilde{M}$ is invariant under the flow associated to (3.10).

The dimension of $\tilde{M}$ is equal to the number of generations, namely $N$. To define equation (3.10) restricted to $\widetilde{M}$, set

$$
\begin{equation*}
b_{j}=\beta_{n} \quad \text { for any } n \in \Lambda_{j} . \tag{3.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then (3.10) restricted to $\tilde{M}$ becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{b}_{j}=-i b_{j}^{2} \bar{b}_{j}+2 i \bar{b}_{j}\left(b_{j-1}^{2}+b_{j+1}^{2}\right), \quad j=0, \ldots N \tag{3.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is a Hamiltonian system with respect to the Hamiltonian

$$
\begin{equation*}
h(b):=\frac{1}{4} \sum_{j}\left|b_{j}\right|^{4}-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j}\left(\bar{b}_{j}^{2} b_{j-1}^{2}+b_{j}^{2} \bar{b}_{j-1}^{2}\right) \tag{3.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the symplectic form $\Omega=\frac{i}{2} d b_{j} \wedge d \bar{b}_{j}$.
Theorem 3. Fix a large $\gamma \gg 1$. Then for any large enough $N$ and $\delta=e^{-\gamma N}$, there exists an orbit of system (3.12), $v>0$ and $T_{0}>0$ such that

$$
\begin{array}{lrl}
\left|b_{3}(0)\right|>1-\delta^{\nu}, & \left|b_{N-1}\left(T_{0}\right)\right| & >1-\delta^{\nu} \\
\left|b_{j}(0)\right|<\delta^{\nu} & \text { for } j \neq 3, & \left|b_{j}\left(T_{0}\right)\right|<\delta^{\nu} \quad \text { for } j \neq N-1 .
\end{array}
$$

Moreover, there exists a constant $\mathbb{K}>0$ independent of $N$ such that $T_{0}$ satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
0<T_{0}<\mathbb{K} N \ln (1 / \delta)=\mathbb{K} \gamma N^{2} \tag{3.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Remark 3.3. An analog of this proposition also holds for some smaller $\delta$, e.g. $\delta=C^{-2^{N}}$. This is related to Remark 1.4 about time of diffusion without cancelations.

Using (3.11), Theorem 3 gives an orbit for equation (3.8). Moreover, both equations (3.8) and (3.12) are invariant under certain rescaling. Indeed, if $b(t)$ is a solution of (3.12), then

$$
\begin{equation*}
b^{\lambda}(t)=\lambda^{-1} b\left(\lambda^{-2} t\right) \tag{3.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a solution of the same equation. By Theorem 3 duration of this solution in time is

$$
\begin{equation*}
T=\lambda^{2} T_{0} \leq \lambda^{2} \mathbb{K} \gamma N^{2}, \tag{3.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $T_{0}$ is the time obtained in Theorem 3, which satisfies (3.14).
We will see that, modulo a rotation of the modes (see (3.7)), there is a solution of (3.4) which is close to the orbit $\beta^{\lambda}$ of (3.8) defined as

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\beta_{n}^{\lambda}(t)=\lambda^{-1} b_{j}\left(\lambda^{-2} t\right) & \text { for each } n \in \Lambda_{j},  \tag{3.17}\\
\beta_{n}^{\lambda}(t)=0 & \text { for each } n \notin \Lambda .
\end{array}
$$

To have the original system well approximated by the truncated system, we need that $\lambda$ is large enough. Then the cubic terms in (3.4) dominate the quintic ones. Nevertheless, the greater $\lambda$, the slower the instability time by (3.16). Thus, we look for the smallest $\lambda$ (with respect to $N$ ) for which the following approximation theorem applies.

Theorem 4. Let $\alpha(t)=\left\{\alpha_{n}(t)\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}$ be the solution of (3.4), $\beta^{\lambda}(t)=\left\{\beta_{n}^{\lambda}(t)\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}$ be the solution of (3.8) given by (3.17), and $T$ be the time defined in (3.16). Suppose that $\operatorname{supp} \alpha(0) \subset \Lambda$ and $\alpha(0)=\beta^{\lambda}(0)$. Then there exists a constant $\kappa>0$ independent of $N$ and $\gamma$ such that for

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda=e^{\kappa \gamma N} \tag{3.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $0<t<T$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\alpha_{n}(t)-e^{i\left(G+|n|^{2}\right) t} \beta_{n}^{\lambda}(t)\right| \leq \frac{1}{8} \lambda^{-2} \tag{3.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $G=2\|\alpha(0)\|_{\ell^{2}}^{2}$.
Using the three key theorems: Theorems 2, 3 and 4, we complete the proof of Theorem 1.
Proof of Theorem 1. Using the change of variables $\Gamma$ obtained in Theorem 2, from the solution $\alpha$ obtained in Theorem 4 we define $a=\Gamma(\alpha)$, which is a solution of system (3.1). We show that this orbit has the properties stated in Theorem 1.

To compute the growth of Sobolev norm of this orbit $a$, we use the notation

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{j}=\sum_{n \in \Lambda_{j}}|n|^{2 s} \quad \text { for } j=1, \ldots, N-1 \tag{3.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

To estimate the mass of our solution recall that $2^{N-1}=\sum_{n \in \Lambda_{j}} 1=\left|\Lambda_{j}\right|$. We want to prove that

$$
\frac{\|a(T)\|_{H^{s}}}{\|a(0)\|_{H^{s}}} \gtrsim \mathcal{K}
$$

and estimate the mass $\|a(0)\|_{L^{2}}$ of the solution. To this end, we start by bounding $\|a(T)\|_{H^{s}}$ in terms of $S_{N-1}$. Since

$$
\|a(T)\|_{H^{s}}^{2} \geq \sum_{n \in \Lambda_{N-1}}|n|^{2 s}\left|a_{n}(T)\right|^{2} \geq S_{N-1} \inf _{n \in \Lambda_{N-1}}\left|a_{n}(T)\right|^{2}
$$

it is enough to obtain a lower bound for $\left|a_{n}(T)\right|$ with $n \in \Lambda_{N-1}$. Using the results of Theorems 2 and 4, we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left|a_{n}(T)\right| \geq\left|\alpha_{n}(T)\right|-\left|\Gamma_{n}(\alpha)(T)-\alpha_{n}(T)\right| \\
& \quad \geq\left|\beta_{n}^{\lambda}(T) e^{i\left(|n|^{2}+G\right) T}\right|-\left|\alpha_{n}(T)-\beta_{n}^{\lambda}(T) e^{i\left(|n|^{2}+G\right) T}\right|-\left|\Gamma_{n}(\alpha)(T)-\alpha_{n}(T)\right| . \tag{3.21}
\end{align*}
$$

We need to obtain a lower bound for the first term of the right hand side and upper bounds for the second and third terms. Indeed, using the definition of $\beta^{\lambda}$ in (3.17) and the results in Theorem 3 we see that for $n \in \Lambda_{N-1}$,

$$
\left|\beta_{n}^{\lambda}(T)\right|^{2}=\lambda^{-2}\left|b_{N-1}\left(T_{0}\right)\right|^{2} \geq \frac{3}{4} \lambda^{-2}
$$

(the relation between $T$ and $T_{0}$ is established in (3.16)).
For the second term on the right hand side of (3.21), it is enough to use Theorem 4 to obtain

$$
\left|\alpha_{n}(T)-\beta_{n}^{\lambda}(T) e^{i\left(|n|^{2}+G\right) T}\right|^{2} \leq\left(\sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\alpha_{n}(T)-\beta_{n}^{\lambda}(T) e^{i\left(|n|^{2}+G\right) T}\right|\right)^{2} \leq \lambda^{-2} / 8
$$

For the lower bound of the third term, we use the bound for $\Gamma$ - Id given in Theorem 2.
Then

$$
\left|\Gamma_{n}(\alpha)(T)-\alpha_{n}(T)\right|^{2} \leq\|\Gamma(\alpha)-\alpha\|_{\ell^{1}}^{2} \leq \lambda^{-2} / 8
$$

Thus, we conclude that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|\alpha(T)\|_{H^{s}}^{2} \geq \frac{1}{2} \lambda^{-2} S_{N-1} \tag{3.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now we prove that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|a(0)\|_{H^{s}}^{2} \lesssim \lambda^{-2} S_{3} \quad \text { and } \quad\|a(0)\|_{L^{2}}^{2} \lesssim \lambda^{-2} 2^{N} \tag{3.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

By the definition of $\lambda$ in (3.18), the second inequality implies that the mass of $a(0)$ is small. On the contrary, the first inequality does not imply that the $H^{s}$-norm of $a(0)$ is small. As a matter of fact, $S_{3}$ is large. ${ }^{3}$

To prove the first inequality of (3.23), let us point out that

$$
\|a(0)\|_{H^{s}}^{2} \leq \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}|n|^{2 s} \mid \alpha_{n}(0)+\left(\left.\Gamma_{n}\left(\alpha(0)-\alpha_{n}(0)\right)\right|^{2}\right.
$$

[^2]We first bound $\|\alpha(0)\|_{H^{s}}^{2}$. To this end, let us recall that supp $\alpha=\Lambda$. Then, recalling also that $\alpha_{n}(0)=\beta_{n}^{\lambda}(0)$ (see Theorem 4), we have

$$
\|\alpha(0)\|_{H^{s}}^{2}=\sum_{n \in \Lambda}|n|^{2 s}\left|\alpha_{n}(0)\right|^{2}=\sum_{n \in \Lambda}|n|^{2 s}\left|\beta_{n}^{\lambda}(0)\right|^{2} .
$$

Recalling the definition of $\beta^{\lambda}$ in (3.17) and the results in Theorem 3, we have

$$
\sum_{n \in \Lambda}|n|^{2 s}\left|\beta_{n}^{\lambda}(0)\right|^{2} \leq\left(1-\delta^{\nu}\right) S_{3}+\delta^{\nu} \sum_{j \neq 3} S_{j} \leq S_{3}\left(1-\delta^{\nu}+\delta^{\nu} \sum_{j \neq 3} \frac{S_{j}}{S_{3}}\right)
$$

From Proposition 3.1 we know that for $j \neq 3$,

$$
S_{j} / S_{3} \lesssim e^{s N}
$$

Therefore, to bound these terms we use the definition of $\delta$ from Theorem 3 taking $\gamma=$ $\tilde{\gamma}(s-1)$. Since $s-1>s_{0}-1>0$ is fixed, we can choose $\tilde{\gamma} \gg 1$. Then

$$
\|\alpha(0)\|_{H^{s}}^{2}=\sum_{n \in \Lambda}|n|^{2 s}\left|\beta_{n}^{\lambda}(0)\right|^{2} \lesssim \lambda^{-2} S_{3} .
$$

To complete the proof of statement (3.23) recall that the support of $\Gamma(\alpha)-\alpha$ is

$$
\Lambda^{3}=\left\{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}: n=n_{1}-n_{2}+n_{3}, n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3} \in \Lambda\right\}
$$

and apply Theorem 2.
Using inequalities (3.22) and (3.23), we have

$$
\frac{\|a(T)\|_{H^{s}}^{2}}{\|a(0)\|_{H^{s}}^{2}} \gtrsim \frac{S_{N-1}}{S_{3}}
$$

and applying Proposition 3.1, we obtain

$$
\frac{\|a(T)\|_{H^{s}}^{2}}{\|a(0)\|_{H^{s}}^{2}} \gtrsim \frac{1}{2} 2^{(s-1)(N-4)} \geq \mathcal{K}^{2} .
$$

It remains to estimate the diffusion time $T$. Use Proposition 3.1 to set $\mathcal{K} \simeq 2^{(s-1) N / 2}$ and $c=4 \kappa \gamma /(s-1)$, and definition (3.18) to set $\lambda=e^{\kappa \gamma N} \simeq \mathcal{K}^{c /(2 \ln 2)}$. Then for the time of diffusion we obtain

$$
|T| \leq \mathbb{K} \gamma \lambda^{2} N^{2} \leq \mathbb{K} \gamma \mathcal{K}^{c / \ln 2} \frac{4 \ln ^{2} \mathcal{K}}{(s-1)^{2} \ln ^{2} 2} \leq \mathcal{K}^{c}
$$

for large $\mathcal{K}$. This completes the proof of Theorem 1.

## 4. The finite-dimensional model: proof of Theorem 3

We devote this section to the proof of Theorem 3. The proofs of the partial results stated in this section are deferred to Sections 5-7.

To prove Theorem 3 we need to analyze certain orbits of system (3.12) given by the Hamiltonian $h(b)$ in (3.13). This system has another conserved quantity: the mass

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{M}(b)=\sum\left|b_{j}\right|^{2} \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

We obtain the orbits given in Theorem 3 on the manifold $\mathcal{M}(b)=1$.
It can be easily seen that on $\mathcal{M}(b)=1$ there are periodic orbits $\mathbb{T}_{j}$ given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
b_{j}(t)=e^{-i t}, \quad b_{k}(t)=0 \quad \text { for } k \neq j \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

which in the normal directions are of mixed type: hyperbolic in some directions and elliptic in the others. Moreover, there exist two families of heteroclinic orbits, which connect consecutive periodic orbits. Consider the 2-dimensional complex plane $L_{j}=$ $\left\{\forall k \neq j, j+1: b_{k}=0\right\}$. In Section 2.1 we show that they are invariant and the dynamics inside is integrable. Then the (2-dimensional) unstable manifold of the periodic orbit $\left(b_{j}(t), b_{j+1}(t)\right)=\left(e^{-i t}, 0\right)$ coincides with the (2-dimensional) stable manifold of $\left(b_{j}(t), b_{j+1}(t)\right)=\left(0, e^{-i t}\right)$ and it is foliated by heteroclinic orbits. As usual, the stable and unstable invariant manifolds have two branches, and therefore we have two families of heteroclinic connections. It turns out that they can be explicitly computed [ $\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10$ ] and are given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\gamma_{j}^{ \pm}(t)=\left(0, \ldots, 0, b_{j}(t), b_{j+1}^{ \pm}(t), 0, \ldots, 0\right) \tag{4.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
b_{j}(t)=\frac{e^{-i(t+\vartheta)} \omega}{\sqrt{1+e^{2 \sqrt{3}} t}}, \quad b_{j+1}^{ \pm}(t)= \pm \frac{e^{-i(t+\vartheta)} \omega^{2}}{\sqrt{1+e^{-2 \sqrt{3}} t}}, \quad \vartheta \in \mathbb{T}
$$

To prove Theorem 3 we look for an orbit which shadows the sequence of separatrices, as follows:

- it starts close to the periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{3}$,
- later it passes close to the periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{4}$,
- later it passes close to the periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{5}$ and so on,
- finally it arrives to a neighborhood of the periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{N-1}$.

Our main goal is to prove the existence of such orbits and estimate the transition time in terms of $N$.

In making these transitions we have the freedom to travel close to $\gamma_{j}^{+}$or to $\gamma_{j}^{-}$. We will always choose $\gamma_{j}^{+}$The procedure for $\gamma_{j}^{-}$is analogous.

We believe it is helpful to the reader to have the following information about the transition of energy. We have a solution $b(t)=\left\{b_{j}(t)\right\}_{j=0, \ldots, N}$ of the system (3.12). We fix $\sigma>0$ small, but independent of $N$, and $\delta=e^{-\gamma N}$. For each $j=2, \ldots, N-1$
near the periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{j}$ and later near $\mathbb{T}_{j+1}$ we have the following table of orders of magnitude of distribution of energy:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { near } \mathbb{T}_{j} \longrightarrow \\
& \text { near } \mathbb{T}_{j+1} \\
&\left|b_{<j-2}\right| \longrightarrow \\
&\left|b_{<j-2}\right|\left(1+\mathcal{O}\left(\delta^{r^{\prime}}\right)\right)  \tag{4.4}\\
&\left|b_{j-2}\right| \longrightarrow \quad K\left|b_{j-2}\right| \\
&\left|b_{j-1}\right|=\mathcal{O}(\sigma) \longrightarrow \quad\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \\
&\left|b_{j}\right|=1-\mathcal{O}\left(\sigma^{2}\right)(\text { mass conservation }) \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}(\sigma) \\
&\left|b_{j+1}\right|=\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \longrightarrow \\
&\left|b_{j+2}\right| \longrightarrow \mathcal{O}\left(\sigma^{2}\right) \text { (mass conservation) } \\
&\left|b_{>j+2}\right| \longrightarrow\left|b_{j+2}\right| \\
&\left|b_{>j+2}\right|\left(1+\mathcal{O}\left(\delta^{r^{\prime}}\right)\right) .
\end{align*}
$$

We decompose a diffusing orbit into $N-5$ parts: near each periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{j}, j=$ $3, \ldots, N-1$, we construct sections transversal to the flow so that they divide the orbit appropriately. With each transition from one section to the next one we associate a map $\mathcal{B}^{j}$ which sends points close to $\mathbb{T}_{j}$ to points close to $\mathbb{T}_{j+1}$. This leads to analysis of the composition of all these maps,

$$
\mathcal{B}^{*}=\mathcal{B}^{N-1} \circ \cdots \circ \mathcal{B}^{3}
$$

To study these maps we will consider different systems of coordinates which, on the one hand, will take advantage of the fact that mass (4.1) is a conserved quantity, and on the other hand, will be adapted to the linear normal behavior of the periodic orbits. These systems of coordinates are specified in Section 4.1.

### 4.1. Symplectic reduction and diagonalization

To study the different transition maps we use a system of coordinates defined in $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$. It consists of two steps:

- A symplectic reduction, which uses the fact that mass (4.1) is conserved and sends the periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{j}$ into a critical point.
- A linear transformation which diagonalizes the linearization of dynamics near this critical point.

We perform the change corresponding to traveling close to the periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{j}$. We restrict ourselves to $\mathcal{M}(b)=1$ and we take

$$
\begin{equation*}
b_{j}=r^{(j)} e^{i \theta^{(j)}}, \quad b_{k}=c_{k}^{(j)} e^{i \theta^{(j)}} \quad \text { for all } k \neq j \tag{4.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\theta^{(j)}$ is a variable on $\mathbb{T}_{j}$. From now on in this section we omit the superscripts $(j)$. It can be seen that after eliminating $r$ using that $\mathcal{M}(b)=1$ and omitting the equation for the
variable $\theta$, one obtains a new set of equations whose $c_{k}$ components form a Hamiltonian system with the Hamiltonian

$$
\begin{aligned}
H^{(j)}(c)= & \frac{1}{4} \sum_{k \neq j}\left|c_{k}\right|^{4}+\frac{1}{4}\left(1-\sum_{k \neq j}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2}\right)^{2}-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k \neq j, j+1}\left(\bar{c}_{k}^{2} c_{k-1}^{2}+c_{k}^{2} \bar{c}_{k-1}^{2}\right) \\
& -\frac{1}{2}\left(1-\sum_{k \neq j}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2}\right)\left(c_{j-1}^{2}+\bar{c}_{j-1}^{2}+c_{j+1}^{2}+\bar{c}_{j+1}^{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and the symplectic form $\Omega=\frac{i}{2} d c_{k} \wedge d \bar{c}_{k}$. The Hamiltonian $H^{(j)}(c)$ can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
H^{(j)}(c)=H_{2}^{(j)}(c)+H_{4}^{(j)}(c) \tag{4.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\begin{align*}
H_{2}^{(j)}(c)= & -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k \neq j}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2}-\frac{1}{2}\left(c_{j-1}^{2}+\bar{c}_{j-1}^{2}+c_{j+1}^{2}+\bar{c}_{j+1}^{2}\right), \\
H_{4}^{(j)}(c)= & \frac{1}{4} \sum_{k \neq j}\left|c_{k}\right|^{4}+\frac{1}{4}\left(\sum_{k \neq j}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2}\right)^{2}-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k \neq j, j+1}\left(\bar{c}_{k}^{2} c_{k-1}^{2}+c_{k}^{2} \bar{c}_{k-1}^{2}\right)  \tag{4.7}\\
& +\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k \neq j}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2}\left(c_{j-1}^{2}+\bar{c}_{j-1}^{2}+c_{j+1}^{2}+\bar{c}_{j+1}^{2}\right) .
\end{align*}
$$

Since we are omitting the evolution of the variable $\theta$, the periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{j}$ has now become a critical point for the equation associated to this Hamiltonian, which is defined as $c=0$. For the same reason, the two families of heteroclinic connections defined in (4.3) have now become just two 1-dimensional heteroclinic connections.

The second step is to look for a change of variables which diagonalizes the vector field around this critical point. This change only modifies the coordinates $\left(c_{j-1}, c_{j+1}\right)$ and is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\binom{c_{j-1}}{c_{j+1}}=\binom{\frac{1}{\operatorname{Im} \omega}\left(\omega^{2} p_{1}+\omega q_{1}\right)}{\frac{1}{\operatorname{Im} \omega}\left(\omega^{2} p_{2}+\omega q_{2}\right)} \tag{4.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\omega=e^{2 \pi i / 3}$ (see $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$ ). Note that this change is conformal and leads to the symplectic form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widetilde{\Omega}=\frac{i}{2} d c_{k} \wedge d \bar{c}_{k}+d q_{1} \wedge d p_{1}+d q_{2} \wedge d p_{2} \tag{4.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

To study the Hamiltonian expressed in the new variables let us introduce some notation. We define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{P}_{j}=\{1 \leq k \leq N: k \neq j-1, j, j+1\} \tag{4.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is the set of subindices of the elliptic modes. From now on we will denote by $q$ and $p$ all the stable and unstable coordinates $q=\left(q_{1}, q_{2}\right)$ and $p=\left(p_{1}, p_{2}\right)$ respectively, and by $c$ all the elliptic modes, namely $c_{k}$ with $k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}$.

Lemma 4.1. The change (4.8) transforms the Hamiltonian (4.6) into the Hamiltonian

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widetilde{H}^{(j)}(p, q, c)=\widetilde{H}_{2}^{(j)}(p, q, c)+\widetilde{H}_{4}^{j}(p, q, c) \tag{4.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

with homogeneous polynomials

$$
\widetilde{H}_{2}^{(j)}(p, q, c)=-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2}+\sqrt{3}\left(p_{1} q_{1}+p_{2} q_{2}\right)
$$

and

$$
\widetilde{H}_{4}^{(j)}(p, q, c)=\widetilde{H}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}(p, q)+\widetilde{H}_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j)}(c)+\widetilde{H}_{\mathrm{mix}}^{(j)}(p, q, c)
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
\widetilde{H}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}(p, q)= & \sum_{k=1}^{3} v_{k} p_{1}^{k} q_{1}^{4-k}+\sum_{k=1}^{3} v_{k} p_{2}^{k} q_{2}^{4-k}+\sum_{k, \ell=0}^{2} v_{k \ell} p_{1}^{k} q_{1}^{2-k} p_{2}^{\ell} q_{2}^{2-\ell}, \\
\widetilde{H}_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j)}(c)= & \frac{1}{4} \sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{4}+\frac{1}{4}\left(\sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2}\right)^{2} \\
& -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k \neq j-1, j, j+1, j+2} c_{k}^{2} \bar{c}_{k-1}^{2}+\bar{c}_{k}^{2} c_{k-1}^{2},  \tag{4.12}\\
\widetilde{H}_{\mathrm{mix}}^{(j)}(p, q, c)= & \sqrt{3} \sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2}\left(q_{1} p_{1}+q_{2} p_{2}\right) \\
& -\frac{1}{2 \operatorname{Im} \omega}\left(\omega^{2} p_{1}+\omega q_{1}\right)^{2} \bar{c}_{j-2}^{2}-\frac{1}{2}\left(\omega^{2} q_{1}+\omega p_{1}\right)^{2} c_{j-2}^{2} \\
& -\frac{1}{2 \operatorname{Im} \omega}\left(\omega^{2} p_{2}+\omega q_{2}\right)^{2} \bar{c}_{j+2}^{2}-\frac{1}{2}\left(\omega^{2} q_{2}+\omega p_{2}\right)^{2} c_{j+2}^{2} \tag{4.13}
\end{align*}
$$

for certain constants $v_{k}, v_{k \ell} \in \mathbb{R}$.
Remark 4.2. Even though the proof of this lemma is a simple substitution of $(p, q)$, we do need specifics of the form of the decomposition into Hamiltonians:

- $\widetilde{H}_{2}^{(j)}$ is the direct product of two linear saddles $\left(p_{i}, q_{i}\right), i=1,2$, and $N-2$ linear elliptic points $\left\{c_{k}\right\}_{k}, k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}$.
- $\widetilde{H}_{\text {hyp }}^{(j)}$ consists only of some saddle terms. In particular, it does not contain terms $p_{i}^{4}, q_{i}^{4}$, $i=1,2$, so $\{q=0\}$ and $\{p=0\}$ are invariant manifolds of $\widetilde{H}$ if we set $c=0$. This implies that the two heteroclinic orbits which connect the critical point $(p, q, c)=$ $(0,0,0)$ to the next periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{j+1}$ are just defined as

$$
\left(p_{1}^{ \pm}(t), q_{1}^{ \pm}(t), p_{2}^{ \pm}(t), q_{2}^{ \pm}(t), c^{ \pm}(t)\right)=\left(0,0, \pm \sqrt{\frac{\operatorname{Im} \omega}{1+e^{-2 \sqrt{3}} t}}, 0,0\right)
$$

Moreover, $\mathbb{T}_{j+1}$ is now defined as $\left|c_{j+1}\right|=1$. Due to (4.8) this is equivalent to $p_{2}^{2}+$ $q_{2}^{2}-p_{2} q_{2}=\operatorname{Im} \omega$.

- Near $p=q=0$, which corresponds to the periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{j}$, the Hamiltonians $\widetilde{H}_{\text {ell }}^{(j)}$ and $\widetilde{H}_{\text {mix }}^{(j)}$ are almost integrable. The only source of nonintegrability comes from the second line of (4.12) for $\widetilde{H}_{\text {ell }}^{(j)}$ and from the second and third lines of (4.13) for $\widetilde{H}_{\text {mix }}^{(j)}$.
- Later we select regions with $c$ 's being exponentially small in $N$. As a result, coupling between hyperbolic variables $(p, q)$ and elliptic ones $c$ is exponentially small in $N$. This decoupling at the leading order is crucial for our analysis.
- Among all the constants $v_{k}$ which appear in the definition of the Hamiltonian (4.11), $v_{02} \neq 0$ is the only one which plays a significant role in the proof of Theorem 3. Indeed, the corresponding term is resonant and will be the leading term in studying the transition close to the saddle. We assume, without loss of generality, that $v_{02}>0$ since the case $\nu_{02}<0$ can be handled analogously.

Proof of Lemma 4.1. To obtain the explicit form of $\widetilde{H}_{4}^{(j)}$, note that $H_{4}^{(j)}(c)$ in (4.7) can be rewritten as

$$
\begin{aligned}
H_{4}^{(j)}(c)= & \frac{1}{4} \sum_{k \neq j}\left|c_{k}\right|^{4}+\frac{1}{4}\left(\sum_{k \neq j}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2}+c_{j-1}^{2}+\bar{c}_{j-1}^{2}+c_{j+1}^{2}+\bar{c}_{j+1}^{2}\right)^{2} \\
& -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k \neq j, j+1}\left(\bar{c}_{k}^{2} c_{k-1}^{2}+c_{k}^{2} \bar{c}_{k-1}^{2}\right)-\frac{1}{4}\left(c_{j-1}^{2}+\bar{c}_{j-1}^{2}+c_{j+1}^{2}+\bar{c}_{j+1}^{2}\right)^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Written in this way, the second term in the first row is just a constant times $\widetilde{H}_{2}^{(j)}$ squared.
Then the particular form of $\widetilde{H}_{\text {hyp }}^{(j)}, \widetilde{H}_{\text {ell }}^{(j)}$, and $\widetilde{H}_{\text {mix }}^{(j)}$ can be obtained by just performing the change of coordinates.
Since the symplectic form is given by (4.9), equations associated to the Hamiltonian (4.11) are

$$
\begin{align*}
& \dot{p}_{1}=\sqrt{3} p_{1}+\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{hyp}, p_{1}}+\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{mix}, p_{1}}=\sqrt{3} p_{1}+\partial_{q_{1}} \widetilde{H}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}+\partial_{q_{1}} \widetilde{H}_{\mathrm{mix}}^{(j)} \\
& \dot{q}_{1}=-\sqrt{3} q_{1}+\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{hyp}, q_{1}}+\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{mix}, q_{1}}=-\sqrt{3} q_{1}-\partial_{p_{1}} \widetilde{H}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}-\partial_{p_{1}} \widetilde{H}_{\mathrm{mix}}^{(j)} \\
& \dot{p}_{2}=\sqrt{3} p_{2}+\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{hyp}, p_{2}}+\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{mix}, p_{2}}=\sqrt{3} p_{2}+\partial_{q_{2}} \widetilde{H}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}+\partial_{q_{2}} \widetilde{H}_{\mathrm{mix}}^{(j)}  \tag{4.14}\\
& \dot{q}_{2}=-\sqrt{3} q_{2}+\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{hyp}, q_{2}}+\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{mix}, q_{2}}=-\sqrt{3} q_{2}-\partial_{p_{2}} \widetilde{H}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}-\partial_{p_{2}} \widetilde{H}_{\mathrm{mix}}^{(j)} \\
& \dot{c}_{k}=i c_{k}+\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}+\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{k}}=i c_{k}-2 i \partial_{c_{k}} \widetilde{H}_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j)}-2 i \partial_{c_{k}} \widetilde{H}_{\mathrm{mix}}^{(j)}
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{hyp}, p_{1}}= & \sum_{k=1}^{3}(4-k) v_{k} p_{1}^{k} q_{1}^{3-k}+v_{12} p_{1} p_{2}^{2}+v_{11} p_{1} p_{2} q_{2}+v_{10} p_{1} q_{2}^{2} \\
& +2 v_{02} q_{1} p_{2}^{2}+2 v_{01} q_{1} p_{2} q_{2}+2 v_{00} q_{1} q_{2}^{2}  \tag{4.15}\\
\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{hyp}, q_{1}}= & -\sum_{k=1}^{3} k v_{k} p_{1}^{k-1} q_{1}^{4-k}-2 v_{22} p_{1} p_{2}^{2}-2 v_{21} p_{1} p_{2} q_{2}-2 \nu_{20} p_{1} q_{2}^{2} \\
& -v_{12} q_{1} p_{2}^{2}-v_{11} q_{1} p_{2} q_{2}-v_{10} q_{1} q_{2}^{2} \tag{4.16}
\end{align*}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{hyp}, p_{2}}= & \sum_{k=1}^{4}(4-k) v_{k} p_{2}^{k} q_{2}^{3-k}+v_{21} p_{1}^{2} p_{2}+v_{11} p_{1} q_{1} p_{2}+v_{01} q_{1}^{2} p_{2} \\
& +2 v_{20} p_{1}^{2} q_{2}+2 v_{10} p_{1} q_{1} q_{2}+2 v_{00} q_{1}^{2} q_{2},  \tag{4.17}\\
\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{hyp}, q_{2}}= & -\sum_{k=1}^{4} k v_{k \ell} p_{2}^{k-1} q_{2}^{4-k}-2 v_{22} p_{1}^{2} p_{2}-2 \nu_{12} p_{1} q_{1} p_{2}-2 v_{02} q_{1}^{2} p_{2} \\
& -v_{21} p_{1}^{2} q_{2}-v_{11} p_{1} q_{1} q_{2}-v_{01} q_{1}^{2} q_{2},  \tag{4.18}\\
\mathcal{Z}_{\text {ell }, c_{k}}= & -i\left|c_{k}\right|^{2} c_{k}-i\left(\sum_{\ell \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{\ell}\right|^{2}\right) c_{k}+2 i \bar{c}_{k}\left(c_{k-1}^{2}+c_{k+1}^{2}\right) .  \tag{4.19}\\
\mathcal{Z}_{\text {mix }, q_{1}}= & \frac{1}{\operatorname{Im} \omega} \omega^{2}\left(\omega^{2} p_{1}+\omega q_{1}\right) \bar{c}_{j-2}^{2}+\frac{1}{\operatorname{Im} \omega} \omega\left(\omega p_{1}+\omega^{2} q_{1}\right) c_{j-2}^{2}-\sqrt{3} \sum_{\ell \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{\ell}\right|^{2} q_{1},  \tag{4.20}\\
\mathcal{Z}_{\text {mix }, p_{1}=}= & -\frac{1}{\operatorname{Im} \omega} \omega\left(\omega^{2} p_{1}+\omega q_{1}\right) \bar{c}_{j-2}^{2}-\frac{1}{\operatorname{Im} \omega} \omega^{2}\left(\omega p_{1}+\omega^{2} q_{1}\right) c_{j-2}^{2}+\sqrt{3} \sum_{\ell \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{\ell}\right|^{2} p_{1},  \tag{4.21}\\
\mathcal{Z}_{\text {mix }, q_{2}}= & \frac{1}{\operatorname{Im} \omega} \omega^{2}\left(\omega^{2} p_{2}+\omega q_{2}\right) \bar{c}_{j+2}^{2}+\frac{1}{\operatorname{Im} \omega} \omega\left(\omega p_{2}+\omega^{2} q_{2}\right) c_{j+2}^{2}-\sqrt{3} \sum_{\ell \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{\ell}\right|^{2} q_{2},  \tag{4.22}\\
\mathcal{Z}_{\text {mix }, p_{2}}= & -\frac{1}{\operatorname{Im} \omega} \omega\left(\omega^{2} p_{2}+\omega q_{2}\right) \bar{c}_{j+2}^{2}-\frac{1}{\operatorname{Im} \omega} \omega^{2}\left(\omega p_{2}+\omega^{2} q_{2}\right) c_{j+2}^{2}+\sqrt{3} \sum_{\ell \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{\ell}\right|^{2} p_{2},  \tag{4.23}\\
\mathcal{Z}_{\text {mix }, c_{k}}= & -2 i \sqrt{3} c_{k}\left(q_{1} p_{1}+q_{2} p_{2}\right) \quad \text { for } k \in \mathcal{P}_{j} \backslash\{j \pm 2\},  \tag{4.24}\\
\mathcal{Z}_{\text {mix }, c_{j-2}=}= & -2 i \sqrt{3} c_{j-2}\left(q_{1} p_{1}+q_{2} p_{2}\right)-\frac{2 i}{\operatorname{Im} \omega}\left(\omega^{2} p_{1}+\omega q_{1}\right)^{2} \bar{c}_{j-2}, \\
\mathcal{Z}_{\text {mix }, c_{j+2}}= & -2 i \sqrt{3} c_{j+2}\left(q_{1} p_{1}+q_{2} p_{2}\right)-\frac{2 i}{\operatorname{Im} \omega}\left(\omega^{2} p_{2}+\omega q_{2}\right)^{2} \bar{c}_{j+2} . \tag{4.25}
\end{align*}
$$

### 4.2. The iterative theorem

Now that we have obtained the adapted coordinates for each saddle, we are ready to explain the strategy to prove Theorem 3. To obtain the orbit given in Theorem 3, we will consider several codimension one sections $\left\{\Sigma_{j}^{\mathrm{in}}\right\}_{j=1}^{N}$ and transition maps $\mathcal{B}^{j}$ from one section $\Sigma_{j}^{\text {in }}$ to the next one $\Sigma_{j+1}^{\mathrm{in}}$. Then, we will detect a class $\left\{\mathcal{V}_{j}\right\}_{j}$ of open sets $\mathcal{V}_{j} \subset \Sigma_{j}^{\mathrm{in}}$, $j=1, \ldots, N-1$, which have a certain almost product structure (see Definition 4.3) such that $\mathcal{V}_{j+1} \subset \mathcal{B}^{j}\left(\mathcal{V}_{j}\right)$ and none of them is empty. Each set $\mathcal{V}_{j}$ is located close to the stable manifold of the periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{j}$. Composing all these maps we will be able to find orbits claimed to exist in Theorem 3.

We start by defining these maps. The first step is to define certain transversal sections to the flow. We use the coordinates adapted to saddle $j,\left(p^{(j)}, q^{(j)}, c^{(j)}\right)$, which have been introduced in Section 4.1, to define these sections. Indeed, in these coordinates, it can be easily seen that the heteroclinic connections (4.3), which connect $\left(p^{(j)}, q^{(j)}, c^{(j)}\right)=(0,0,0)$ to the previous and next saddles are defined by $\left(q_{1}^{(j)}, p_{2}^{(j)}, q_{2}^{(j)}, c^{(j)}\right)=(0,0,0,0)$ and $\left(p_{1}^{(j)}, q_{1}^{(j)}, p_{2}^{(j)}, c^{(j)}\right)=(0,0,0,0)$ respectively. Thus, we define the map $\mathcal{B}^{j}$ from the section

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Sigma_{j}^{\mathrm{in}}=\left\{q_{1}^{(j)}=\sigma\right\} \tag{4.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

to the section

$$
\Sigma_{j+1}^{\mathrm{in}}=\left\{q_{1}^{(j+1)}=\sigma\right\}
$$

Here $\sigma>0$ is a small parameter to be determined later on. In fact, we do not define the map $\mathcal{B}^{j}$ in the whole section but in an open set $\mathcal{V}^{j} \subset \Sigma_{j}^{\text {in }}$, which lies close to the heteroclinic that connects saddle $j-1$ to saddle $j$. Then, we will consider maps

$$
\mathcal{B}^{j}: \mathcal{V}_{j} \subset \Sigma_{j}^{\mathrm{in}} \rightarrow \Sigma_{j+1}^{\mathrm{in}}
$$

and we will choose the sets $\mathcal{V}^{j}$ recursively in such a way that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{V}_{j+1} \subset \mathcal{B}^{j}\left(\mathcal{V}_{j}\right) \tag{4.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

This condition will allow us to compose all the maps $\mathcal{B}^{j}$. Indeed, the domain of definition of the map $\mathcal{B}^{j+1}$ will intersect the image of the map $\mathcal{B}^{j}$ in an open set.

The sets $\mathcal{V}_{j}$ will have a product-like structure, as is stated in the next definition. Before stating it, we introduce some notation. We define subsets of the indices $\mathcal{P}_{j}$ in (4.10),

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{P}_{j}^{-}=\{k=1, \ldots, j-3\}, \quad \mathcal{P}_{j}^{+}=\{k=j+3, \ldots, N\} \tag{4.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

The first set consists of nonneighbor modes preceding $j-1$, the second of foreseeing nonneighbor modes to $j+1$. The modes $k=j \pm 2$ are called adjacent. These modes have a stronger interaction with the hyperbolic modes.

Note that we split the nonneighbor elliptic modes into two sets: the + stands for future, and - stands for past. Indeed, along orbits we study, future modes will eventually become hyperbolic in the future, and past ones have already been hyperbolic. Analogously, we call the mode $c_{j+2}^{(j)}$ future adjacent and $c_{j-2}^{(j)}$ past adjacent.

For a point $\left(p^{(j)}, q^{(j)}, c^{(j)}\right) \in \Sigma_{j}^{\text {in }}$, we define $c_{-}^{(j)}=\left(c_{1}^{(j)}, \ldots, c_{j-2}^{(j)}\right)$ and $c_{+}^{(j)}=$ $\left(c_{j+2}^{(j)}, \ldots, c_{N}^{(j)}\right)$. We also define the projections $\pi_{ \pm}\left(p^{(j)}, q^{(j)}, c^{(j)}\right)=c_{ \pm}^{(j)}$ and $\pi_{\mathrm{hyp},+}=$ $\left(p^{(j)}, q^{(j)}, c_{+}^{(j)}\right)$.
Definition 4.3. Fix positive constants $r \in(0,1), \delta$ and $\sigma$ and define a multi-parameter set of positive constants

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{I}_{j}=\left\{C^{(j)}, m_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j)}, M_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm}^{(j)}, m_{\mathrm{adj}}^{(j)}, M_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm}^{(j)}, m_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}, M_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}\right\} . \tag{4.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then we say that a (nonempty) set $\mathcal{U} \subset \Sigma_{j}^{\mathrm{in}}$ has an $\mathcal{I}_{j}$-product-like structure if it satisfies the following two conditions:
C1

$$
\mathcal{U} \subset \mathbb{D}_{j}^{1} \times \cdots \times \mathbb{D}_{j}^{j-2} \times \mathcal{N}_{j}^{+} \times \mathbb{D}_{j}^{j+2} \times \cdots \times \mathbb{D}_{j}^{N}
$$

where

$$
\mathbb{D}_{j}^{k}=\left\{\left|c_{k}^{(j)}\right| \leq M_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm}^{(j)} \delta^{(1-r) / 2}\right\} \quad \text { for } k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{ \pm}, \quad \mathbb{D}_{j}^{j \pm 2} \subset\left\{\left|c_{j \pm 2}^{(j)}\right| \leq M_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm}^{(j)}\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}\right\}
$$

and

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathcal{N}_{j}^{+}=\{ & \left(p_{1}^{(j)}, q_{1}^{(j)}, p_{2}^{(j)}, q_{2}^{(j)}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{4}: \\
& \quad-C^{(j)} \delta\left(\ln (1 / \delta)+M_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}\right) \leq p_{1}^{(j)} \leq-C^{(j)} \delta\left(\ln (1 / \delta)-M_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}\right) \\
& \left.q_{1}^{(j)}=\sigma, g_{\mathcal{I}_{j}}\left(p_{2}, q_{2}, \sigma, \delta\right)=0,\left|p_{2}^{(j)}\right|,\left|q_{2}^{(j)}\right| \leq M_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}\right\}, \tag{4.30}
\end{align*}
$$

C2

$$
\mathcal{N}_{j}^{-} \times \mathbb{D}_{j,-}^{j+2} \times \cdots \times \mathbb{D}_{j,-}^{N} \subset \pi_{\mathrm{hyp},+} \mathcal{U}
$$

where

$$
\mathbb{D}_{j,-}^{k}=\left\{\left|c_{k}^{(j)}\right| \leq m_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j)} \delta^{(1-r) / 2}\right\} \quad \text { for } k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{+}, \quad \mathbb{D}_{j,-}^{j+2}=\left\{\left|c_{j+2}^{(j)}\right| \leq m_{\mathrm{adj}}^{(j)}\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}\right\}
$$

and

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathcal{N}_{j}^{-}=\left\{\left(p_{1}^{(j)}, q_{1}^{(j)}, p_{2}^{(j)}, q_{2}^{(j)}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{4}:\right. \\
& \quad-C^{(j)} \delta\left(\ln (1 / \delta)+m_{\text {hyp }}^{(j)}\right) \leq p_{1}^{(j)} \leq-C^{(j)} \delta\left(\ln (1 / \delta)-m_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}\right) \\
&\left.q_{1}^{(j)}=\sigma, g_{\mathcal{I}_{j}}\left(p_{2}, q_{2}, \sigma, \delta\right)=0,\left|p_{2}^{(j)}\right|,\left|q_{2}^{(j)}\right| \leq m_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}\right\} \tag{4.31}
\end{align*}
$$

The function $g_{\mathcal{I}_{j}}\left(p_{2}, q_{2}, \sigma, \delta\right)$ is a smooth function defined in (6.5).
Remark 4.4. Note that for this product-like set the variable $p_{1}^{(j)}$ is selected negative. This is related to the fact that $\nu_{02}>0$ (see Remark 4.2). The reason for the choice of the sign of $p_{1}^{(j)}$ will be clear in Section 5. In particular, see Remark 5.3.
The domains $\mathcal{V}_{j}$ of the maps $\mathcal{B}^{j}$ will have $\mathcal{I}_{j}$-product-like structure as defined in Definition 4.3. Thus, we need to obtain the multi-parameter sets $\mathcal{I}_{j}$. They will be defined recursively. Recall that to prove Theorem 3, we want to obtain an orbit which starts close to the periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{3}$. Thus, the recursively defined multi-parameter sets $\mathcal{I}_{j}$ will start with a set $\mathcal{I}_{3}$.
Definition 4.5. Fix any constants $r, r^{\prime} \in(0,1)$ satisfying $0<r^{\prime}<1 / 2-2 r, K>0$ and small $\delta, \sigma>0$. We say that a collection $\left\{\mathcal{I}_{j}\right\}_{j=3, \ldots, N-1}$ of multi-parameter sets defined in (4.29) is ( $\sigma, \delta, K$ )-recursive if for $j=3, \ldots, N-1$ the constants $C^{(j)}$ satisfy

$$
C^{(j)} / K \leq C^{(j+1)} \leq K C^{(j)}, \quad 0<m_{\text {hyp }}^{(j+1)} \leq m_{\text {hyp }}^{(j)},
$$

and all the other parameters should be strictly positive and are defined recursively as

$$
\begin{aligned}
M_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm}^{(j+1)} & =M_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm}^{(j)}+K \delta^{r^{\prime}}, & M_{\mathrm{adj},-}^{(j+1)}=K M_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}, \\
m_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j+1)} & =m_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j)}-K \delta^{r^{\prime}}, & m_{\mathrm{adj}}^{(j+1)}=\frac{1}{2} m_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j)}-K \delta^{r^{\prime}}, \\
M_{\mathrm{adj},+}^{(j+1)} & =2 M_{\mathrm{ell},+}^{(j)}+K \delta^{r^{\prime}}, & M_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j+1)}=K M_{\mathrm{adj},+}^{(j)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

The next theorem recursively defines the product-like sets $\mathcal{V}_{j}$ so that condition (4.27) is satisfied.

Theorem 5 (Iterative Theorem). Fix large $\gamma>0$, small $\sigma>0$, and any constants $r, r^{\prime} \in(0,1)$ satisfying $0<r^{\prime}<1 / 2-2 r$. Set $\delta=e^{-\gamma N}$. Then there exist strictly positive constants $K$ and $C^{(3)}$ independent of $N$ satisfying

$$
\begin{equation*}
C^{(3)} \leq \delta^{-r} K^{-(N-2)}, \tag{4.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

and a multi-parameter set $\mathcal{I}_{3}$ (as defined in (4.29)) with the following property. There exists a $(\sigma, \delta, K)$-recursive collection $\left\{\mathcal{I}_{j}\right\}_{j=3, \ldots, N-1}$ of multi-parameter sets and $\mathcal{I}_{j}$-product-like sets $\mathcal{V}_{j} \subset \Sigma_{j}^{\mathrm{in}}$ such that for each $j=3, \ldots, N-1$ we have

$$
\mathcal{V}_{j+1} \subset \mathcal{B}^{j}\left(\mathcal{V}_{j}\right)
$$

Moreover, the time spent to reach the section $\Sigma_{j+1}^{\mathrm{in}}$ can be bounded by

$$
\left|T_{\mathcal{B}^{j}}\right| \leq K \ln (1 / \delta)
$$

for any $(p, q, c) \in \mathcal{V}_{j}$ and any $j=3, \ldots, N-2$.
Note that

$$
C^{(j)} / K<C^{(j+1)}<K C^{(j)} \quad \text { implies } \quad K^{-(j-2)} C^{(3)} \leq C^{(j+1)} \leq K^{j+2} C^{(3)}
$$

Namely, at each saddle, the orbits we are studying may lie farther from the heteroclinic orbit. Nevertheless, by the condition on $\delta$ from Theorem 3 and (4.32), these constants do not grow too much. Indeed,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\delta^{r} \leq C^{(j)} \leq \delta^{-r} \tag{4.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $r>0$ can be taken as small as desired. We will use the bound (4.33) throughout the proof of Theorem 5 .

Theorem 3 is a straightforward consequence of Theorem 5. In fact, we need more precise information than the one stated in Theorem 3. This information will be used in the proof of Theorem 4. We state it in the following theorem. Theorem 3 is a straightforward consequence of it.

Theorem 3-bis. Assume that the conditions of Theorem 3 hold. Then there exists an orbit $b(t)$ of equations (3.12), constants $\mathbb{K}>0$ and $v>0$, independent of $N$ and $\delta$, and $T_{0}>0$ satisfying

$$
T_{0} \leq \mathbb{K} N \ln (1 / \delta),
$$

such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|b_{3}(0)\right|>1-\delta^{\nu}, \quad\left|b_{N-2}\left(T_{0}\right)\right|>1-\delta^{\nu}, \\
& \left|b_{j}(0)\right|<\delta^{\nu} \quad \text { for } j \neq 3, \quad\left|b_{j}\left(T_{0}\right)\right|<\delta^{\nu} \quad \text { for } j \neq N-2 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Moreover, denote by $t_{j} \in\left[0, T_{0}\right]$ the time for which $b\left(t_{j}\right) \in \Sigma_{j}^{\mathrm{in}}$. Then

$$
t_{j+1}-t_{j} \leq \mathbb{K} \ln (1 / \delta),
$$

and for any $t \in\left[t_{j}, t_{j+1}\right]$ and $k \neq j-1, j, j+1$,

$$
\left|b_{k}(t)\right| \leq \delta^{\nu}
$$

Proof. It is enough to take as an initial condition $b^{0}$ a point in the set $\mathcal{V}_{3} \subset \Sigma_{3}^{\text {in }}$ obtained in Theorem 5. Then thanks to that theorem we know that there exists a time $T_{0}$ satisfying

$$
T_{0} \sim N \ln (1 / \delta)
$$

such that the corresponding orbit satisfies $b\left(T_{0}\right) \in \mathcal{V}_{N-1} \subset \Sigma_{N-1}^{\mathrm{in}}$. Note that in this section there are two components of $b$ with size independent of $\delta$. Nevertheless, from the proof of Theorem 5 in Section 6 it can be easily seen that if we shift the time interval $\left[0, T_{0}\right]$ to $\left[\rho \ln (1 / \delta), \rho \ln (1 / \delta)+T_{0}\right]$, for any $\rho<\sqrt{3}$, then there exists $v>0$ such that the orbit $b(t)$ satisfies the statements in Theorem 3-bis.

### 4.3. Structure of the proof of the Iterative Theorem 5

To prove Theorem 5 we split it into two inductive lemmas. The first part analyzes the evolution of the trajectories close to saddle $j$ and the second one the travel along the heteroclinic orbit. Thus, we study $\mathcal{B}^{j}$ as a composition of two maps.

We consider an intermediate section transversal to the flow

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}=\left\{p_{2}^{(j)}=\sigma\right\}, \tag{4.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

and then we consider two maps: first, the local map

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{B}_{\mathrm{loc}}^{j}: \mathcal{V}_{j} \subset \Sigma_{j}^{\mathrm{in}} \rightarrow \Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }} \tag{4.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

which studies the trajectories locally close to the saddle, and then a second map,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}: \mathcal{U}^{j} \subset \Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }} \rightarrow \Sigma_{j+1}^{\text {in }} \tag{4.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

which we call the global map, which studies how the trajectories behave close to the heteroclinic orbit. The map $\mathcal{B}^{j}$ considered in Theorem 5 is just $\mathcal{B}^{j}=\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j} \circ \mathcal{B}_{\text {loc }}^{j}$.

Before we go into technicalities we write a table analogous to (4.4) of the properties of the local and global maps. The local map $\mathcal{B}_{\mathrm{loc}}^{j}$, projected onto hyperbolic variables, has the form

$$
\begin{array}{rll}
p_{1}^{(j)} \sim C^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta) & \longrightarrow & \left|p_{1}^{(j)}\right| \lesssim\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \\
q_{1}^{(j)}=\sigma & \longrightarrow & \left|q_{1}\right| \lesssim\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \\
\left|p_{2}^{(j)}\right| \lesssim\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} & \longrightarrow & p_{2}^{(j)}=\sigma  \tag{4.37}\\
\left|q_{2}^{(j)}\right| \lesssim\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} & \longrightarrow & \left|q_{2}^{(j)}\right| \lesssim C^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta) .
\end{array}
$$

The global map $\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}$, projected onto hyperbolic variables of the corresponding saddles, has the form

$$
\begin{array}{rll}
\left|p_{1}^{(j)}\right| \lesssim\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} & \longrightarrow & \left|p_{1}^{(j+1)}\right| \lesssim C^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta) \\
\left|q_{1}^{(j)}\right| \lesssim\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} & \longrightarrow & q_{1}^{(j+1)}=\sigma  \tag{4.38}\\
p_{2}^{(j)}=\sigma & \longrightarrow & \left|p_{2}^{(j+1)}\right| \lesssim\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \\
\left|q_{2}^{(j)}\right| \lesssim C^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta) & \longrightarrow & \left|q_{2}^{(j+1)}\right| \lesssim\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} .
\end{array}
$$

To compose the two maps we need to know that the set $\mathcal{U}^{j}$, introduced in (4.36), has a modified product-like structure. To define its properties, we consider the projection

$$
\tilde{\pi}\left(c_{-}^{(j)}, p_{1}^{(j)}, q_{1}^{(j)}, p_{2}^{(j)}, q_{2}^{(j)}, c_{+}^{(j)}\right)=\left(p_{2}^{(j)}, q_{2}^{(j)}, c_{+}^{(j)}\right)
$$

Definition 4.6. Fix constants $r \in(0,1), \delta>0$ and $\sigma>0$ and define a multi-parameter set of positive constants

$$
\widetilde{\mathcal{I}}_{j}=\left\{\widetilde{C}^{(j)}, \widetilde{m}_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j)}, \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm}^{(j)}, \widetilde{m}_{\mathrm{adj}}^{(j)}, \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm}^{(j)}, \widetilde{m}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}, \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}\right\} .
$$

Then we say that a (nonempty) set $\mathcal{U} \subset \Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}$ has an $\widetilde{\mathcal{I}}_{j}$-product-like structure provided it satisfies the following two conditions:

## C1

$$
\mathcal{U} \subset \widetilde{\mathbb{D}}_{j}^{1} \times \cdots \times \widetilde{\mathbb{D}}_{j}^{j-2} \times \widetilde{\mathcal{N}}_{j,-} \times \widetilde{\mathbb{D}}_{j}^{j+2} \times \cdots \times \widetilde{\mathbb{D}}_{j}^{N}
$$

where

$$
\widetilde{\mathbb{D}}_{j}^{k}=\left\{\left|c_{k}^{(j)}\right| \leq \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm}^{(j)} \delta^{(1-r) / 2}\right\} \quad \text { for } k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{ \pm}, \quad \widetilde{\mathbb{D}}_{j}^{j \pm 2} \subset\left\{\left|c_{j \pm 2}^{(j)}\right| \leq \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm}^{(j)}\left(\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}\right\}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \tilde{\mathcal{N}}_{j}^{+}=\left\{\left(p_{1}^{(j)}, q_{1}^{(j)}, p_{2}^{(j)}, q_{2}^{(j)}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{4}:\left|p_{1}^{(j)}\right|,\left|q_{1}^{(j)}\right| \leq \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}\left(\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}\right. \\
&\left.p_{2}^{(j)}=\sigma,-\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\left(\ln (1 / \delta)+\widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}\right) \leq q_{2}^{(j)} \leq-\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\left(\ln (1 / \delta)-\widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}\right)\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

C2

$$
\begin{aligned}
\{\sigma\} \times\left[-\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\left(\ln (1 / \delta)-\widetilde{m}_{\text {hyp }}^{(j)}\right),-\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta(\ln (1 / \delta)\right. & \left.\left.+\widetilde{m}_{\text {hyp }}^{(j)}\right)\right] \\
& \times \mathbb{D}_{j,-}^{j+2} \times \cdots \times \mathbb{D}_{j,-}^{N} \subset \widetilde{\pi}(\mathcal{U})
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
\mathbb{D}_{j,-}^{k}=\left\{\left|c_{k}^{(j)}\right| \leq \tilde{m}_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j)} \delta^{(1-r) / 2}\right\} \quad \text { for } k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{+}, \quad \mathbb{D}_{j,-}^{j+2}=\left\{\left|c_{j+2}^{(j)}\right| \leq \tilde{m}_{\mathrm{adj}}^{(j)}\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}\right\}
$$

With this definition, we can state the following two lemmas. Combining these we deduce Theorem 5.
Lemma 4.7. Fix any natural $j$ with $3 \leq j \leq N-2$, constants $r, r^{\prime} \in(0,1)$ satisfying $0<r^{\prime}<1 / 2-2 r$, and $\sigma>0$ small enough. Take $\delta=e^{-\gamma N}, \gamma=\gamma(\sigma) \gg 1$, and consider a parameter set $\mathcal{I}_{j}$ with $M_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)} \geq 1$ and an $\mathcal{I}_{j}$-product-like set $\mathcal{V}_{j} \subset \Sigma_{j}^{\mathrm{in}}$. Then, for $N$ large enough, there exist:

- A constant $K>{\underset{\sim}{\mathcal{L}}}_{j}^{0}$ independent of $N$ and $j$ but which might depend on $\sigma$.
- A parameter set $\widetilde{\mathcal{I}}_{j}$ whose constants satisfy

$$
C^{(j)} / 2 \leq \widetilde{C}^{(j)} \leq 2 C^{(j)}, \quad 0<\widetilde{m}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)} \leq m_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{M}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)} & =K, & \tilde{M}_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm}^{(j)} & =M_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm}^{(j)}(1+4 \sigma), \\
\tilde{M}_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm}^{(j)} & =M_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm}^{(j)}+K \delta^{r^{\prime}}, & \tilde{m}_{\mathrm{adj}}^{(j)} & =m_{\mathrm{adj}}^{(j)}(1-4 \sigma) . \\
\tilde{m}_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j)} & =m_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j)}-K \delta^{r^{\prime}}, & &
\end{aligned}
$$

- An $\widetilde{\mathcal{I}}_{j}$-product-like set $\mathcal{U}_{j}$ for which the map $\mathcal{B}_{\text {loc }}^{j}$ satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{U}_{j} \subset \mathcal{B}_{\mathrm{loc}}^{j}\left(\mathcal{V}_{j}\right) \tag{4.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

Moreover, the time to reach the section $\Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}$ can be bounded as

$$
\left|T_{\mathcal{B}_{\text {loc }}^{j}}\right| \leq K \ln (1 / \delta) .
$$

The proof of this lemma is the most delicate part in the proof of the Iterative Theorem 5, since we are passing close to a hyperbolic fixed point, which implies big deviations. It is split into several parts to simplify the exposition.

First, in Section 5, we set the elliptic modes $c$ to zero, and we study the saddle map associated to the corresponding system. We call this system the Hyperbolic Toy Model. It has two degrees of freedom. The saddle is resonant since the two stable eigenvalues coincide (see (4.14)), and therefore the Hyperbolic Toy Model is not well approximated by its linearization around the saddle. This fact complicates the proof of Lemma 4.7, and it has been exemplified with a simplified model in Section 2.2. To overcome this problem, we consider the techniques developed by Shilnikov [Šil67], which allow us to consider a good nonlinear first order of the Hyperbolic Toy Model which gives a very precise control of the behavior of the Hyperbolic Toy Model while traveling close to the saddle.

Then, in Section 6 we use the results obtained for the Hyperbolic Toy Model to deal with the full system and prove Lemma 4.7. To prove the lemma we take advantage of the fact that, since we take the elliptic modes rather small, at first order they are just rotating and therefore their modulus barely changes. This implies that at first order, the coupling between the elliptic and the hyperbolic modes is very weak and thus, using the results for the Hyperbolic Toy Model with some additional analysis of the elliptic modes, one can prove Lemma 4.7.

Now we state the iterative lemma for the global maps $\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}$.
Lemma 4.8. Fix any natural $j$ with $3 \leq j \leq N-2$, constants $r, r^{\prime} \in(0,1)$ satisfying $0<r^{\prime}<1 / 2-2 r$ and $\sigma>0$ small enough. Take $\delta=e^{-\gamma N}, \gamma=\gamma(\sigma) \gg 1$, and consider a parameter set $\widetilde{\mathcal{I}}_{j}$ and an $\widetilde{\mathcal{I}}_{j}$-product-like set $\mathcal{U}_{j} \subset \Sigma_{j}^{\text {out. }}$. Then, for $N$ large enough, there exist:

- A constant $\widetilde{K}$ depending on $\sigma$, but independent of $N$ and $j$.
- A parameter set $\mathcal{I}_{j+1}$ whose constants satisfy

$$
\widetilde{C}^{(j)} / \widetilde{K} \leq C^{(j+1)} \leq \widetilde{K} \widetilde{C}^{(j)}, \quad 0<m_{\text {hyp }}^{(j+1)} \leq \tilde{m}_{\text {hyp }}^{(j)}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& M_{\mathrm{ell},-}^{(j+1)}=\max \left\{\tilde{M}_{\mathrm{ell},-}^{(j)}+\widetilde{K} \delta^{r^{\prime}}, \tilde{K} \tilde{M}_{\mathrm{adj},-}^{(j)}\right\}, \\
& M_{\mathrm{ell},+}^{(j+1)}=\widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{ell},+}^{(j)}+\widetilde{K} \delta^{r^{\prime}}, \quad m_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j+1)}=\widetilde{m}_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j)}-\widetilde{K} \delta^{r^{\prime}}, \\
& M_{\mathrm{adj},+}^{(j+1)}=\widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{ell},+}^{(j)}+\widetilde{K} \delta^{r^{\prime}}, \\
& M_{\mathrm{adj},--}^{(j+1)}=\widetilde{K} \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}, \quad m_{\mathrm{adj}}^{(j+1)}=\widetilde{m}_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j)}+\widetilde{K} \delta^{r^{\prime}}, \\
& M_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j+1)}=\max \left\{\widetilde{K} \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{adj},+}^{(j)}, \widetilde{K}\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

- An $\mathcal{I}_{j+1}$-product-like set $\mathcal{V}_{j+1} \subset \Sigma_{j+1}^{\text {in }}$ for which the map $\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}$ satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{V}_{j+1} \subset \mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}\left(\mathcal{U}_{j}\right) \tag{4.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

Moreover, the time spent to reach the section $\Sigma_{j+1}^{\mathrm{in}}$ can be bounded as

$$
\left|T_{\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}}\right| \leq \widetilde{K}
$$

The proof of this lemma is postponed to Section 7.
Now it only remains to deduce from Lemmas 4.7 and 4.8 the Iterative Theorem 5.
Proof of Theorem 5. We choose the multi-parameter set $\mathcal{I}_{3}$ so that we can iteratively apply Lemmas 4.7 and 4.8. Indeed, from the recursive formulas in Lemma 4.7 and 4.8 it is clear that it is enough to choose $\mathcal{I}_{3}$ satisfying

$$
1<M_{\mathrm{ell},+}^{(3)} \ll M_{\mathrm{adj},+}^{(3)} \ll M_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(3)} \ll M_{\mathrm{adj},-}^{(3)} \ll M_{\mathrm{ell},-,}^{(3)}, \quad 0<m_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(3)}<3 m_{\mathrm{adj}}^{(3)}
$$

From the choice of the constants in $\mathcal{I}_{3}$ and the recursion formulas in Lemmas 4.7 and 4.8, we have $M_{\text {hyp }}^{(j)} \geq 1$ for any $j=3, \ldots, N-1$. This fact, along with conditions (4.39) and (4.40), allows us to apply Lemmas 4.7 and 4.8 iteratively so that we obtain the ( $\delta, \sigma, K$ )recursive collection $\left\{\mathcal{I}_{j}\right\}_{j=3, \ldots, N-1}$ of multi-parameter sets and the $\mathcal{I}_{j}$-product-like sets $\mathcal{V}_{j} \subset \Sigma_{j}^{\text {in }}$. In particular, note that the recursion formulas stated in Theorem 5 can be easily deduced from the recursion formulas given in Lemmas 4.7 and 4.8 and the choice of $\mathcal{I}_{3}$.

Finally, we bound the time:

$$
\left|T_{\mathcal{B}^{j}}\right| \leq\left|T_{\mathcal{B}_{\mathrm{loc}}^{j}}\right|+\left|T_{\mathcal{B}_{\mathrm{glob}}^{j}}\right| \leq(K+\widetilde{K}) \ln (1 / \delta)
$$

This completes the proof of Theorem 5.

## 5. The Hyperbolic Toy Model

In this section we set the elliptic modes to zero, namely, we deal with the system

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\dot{p}_{1}=\sqrt{3} p_{1}+\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{hyp}, p_{1}}, & \dot{p}_{2}=\sqrt{3} p_{2}+\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{hyp}, p_{2}}  \tag{5.1}\\
\dot{q}_{1}=-\sqrt{3} q_{1}+\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{hyp}, q_{1}}, & \dot{q}_{2}=-\sqrt{3} q_{2}+\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{hyp}, q_{2}}
\end{array}
$$

where the functions $\mathcal{Z}_{\text {hyp,* }}$ are defined in (4.15)-(4.18).
We start by setting some notation. We write

$$
z=\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, x_{2}, y_{2}\right)
$$

for the new set of coordinates, whose components are also denoted by $z_{i}=\left(x_{i}, y_{i}\right)$. We also use the notation $x=\left(x_{1}, x_{2}\right)$ and $y=\left(y_{1}, y_{2}\right)$.

Moreover, we use $K$ for any positive constant independent of $\delta, N, j$, and $\sigma$, and we use $K_{\sigma}$ for any positive constant depending on $\sigma$, but independent of $\delta, N$ and $j$. Analogously, we write $a=\mathcal{O}(b)$ if $|a| \leq K|b|$, and $a=\mathcal{O}_{\sigma}(b)$ if $|a| \leq K_{\sigma}|b|$. We will also use all this notation in Sections 6 and 7.

The first step is to find a resonant $\mathcal{C}^{k}$ normal form in a neighborhood of size $\sigma$ of the saddle. Note that we do not need much regularity for the normal form since all our study will be done in the $\mathcal{C}^{0}$ norm. It turns out it is enough to consider a $\mathcal{C}^{1}$ normal form. Before we state our next claim about the normal form we formulate a well known result of Bronstein-Kopanskii [BK92] about finitely smooth normal forms of vector fields near a critical point. We cannot use classical results about linearizability, because our saddle is resonant.

The main result of Bronstein-Kopanskii [BK92] is that near a saddle point a vector field can be transformed into a polynomial one by a finitely smooth change of coordinates with only certain (resonant) monomials present. For the convenience of the reader we use the notation of that paper.

### 5.1. Finitely smooth polynomial normal forms of vector fields in near a saddle point

Let $\dot{x}=F(x)$ be a vector field with the origin being a critical point, i.e. $F(0)=0$ on $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ for some $d \in \mathbb{Z}_{+}$. Assume that $F$ is $\mathcal{C}^{K}$ for some positive integer $K \in \mathbb{Z}_{+}$, i.e. $F$ has all partial derivatives of order up to $K$ uniformly bounded. Denote the linearization of $F$ at 0 by $A:=D F(0)$ and $f(x)=F(x)-A(x)$. Then the equation becomes

$$
\dot{x}=A x+f(x), \quad f(0)=0, \quad D f(0)=0
$$

Let $\nu_{1}, \ldots, v_{d}$ denote the eigenvalues of $A$, and $\theta_{1}, \ldots, \theta_{n}$ be all distinct numbers contained in the set $\left\{\operatorname{Re} \nu_{i}: i=1, \ldots, d\right\}$. Assume that none of $\theta_{i}$ 's is zero or, in other words, the rest point is hyperbolic.

The space $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ can be represented as a direct sum of $A$-invariant subspaces $E_{1}, \ldots, E_{n}$ such that the eigenvalues of the operator $\left.A\right|_{E_{i}}$ satisfy the condition $\operatorname{Re} \nu_{i}=\theta_{i}$.

Theorem 6 ([BK92]). Let $k$ be a positive integer. Assume that the vector field $\dot{x}=F(x)$ is of class $\mathcal{C}^{K}, x=0$ is a hyperbolic saddle point and $A=D F(0)$. If $K \geq Q(k)$ for some computable function $Q(\cdot)$, then, for some positive integer $N$, this vector field near the point $x=0$ can be reduced by a transformation $y=\Phi(x), \Phi \in \mathcal{C}^{k}$, to the polynomial resonant normal form

$$
\dot{y}=A y+\sum_{|\tau|=2}^{N} p_{\tau} y^{\tau},
$$

where $\tau \in \mathbb{Z}_{+}^{d}$ and $p_{\tau}$ denotes a multi-homogeneous polynomial $p_{\tau}\left(E_{1}, \ldots, E_{n} ; E_{1} \oplus\right.$ $\left.\cdots \oplus E_{n}\right), p_{\tau}=\left(p_{\tau}^{1}, \ldots, p_{\tau}^{d}\right)$ and $p_{\tau}^{i} \neq 0$ implies $\nu_{i}=\tau^{1} v_{1}+\cdots+\tau^{d} v_{d}$ (by the resonant condition).

In [BK92, Theorem 3] the authors give an upper bound on $N$. In our case $d=4, n=2$, $k=1$. A direct application of this theorem is the following

Lemma 5.1. There exists a $\mathcal{C}^{1}$ change of coordinates

$$
\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, p_{2}, q_{2}\right)=\Psi_{\mathrm{hyp}}\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, x_{2}, y_{2}\right)=\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, x_{2}, y_{2}\right)+\widetilde{\Psi}_{\mathrm{hyp}}\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, x_{2}, y_{2}\right)
$$

which transforms the vector field (5.1) into the vector field

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{X}_{\text {hyp }}(z)=D z+R_{\text {hyp }}, \tag{5.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $D$ is the diagonal matrix $D=\operatorname{diag}(\sqrt{3},-\sqrt{3}, \sqrt{3},-\sqrt{3})$ and $R_{\text {hyp }}$ is a polynomial, which only contains resonant monomials. ${ }^{4}$ It can be split as

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\mathrm{hyp}}=R_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{0}+R_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{1} \tag{5.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $R_{\text {hyp }}^{0}$ is the first order, which is given by

$$
R_{\text {hyp }}^{0}(z)=\left(\begin{array}{l}
R_{\text {hy }, x_{1}}^{0}(z)  \tag{5.4}\\
R_{\text {hyp }, y_{1}}^{0}(z) \\
R_{\text {hyp }, x_{2}}^{0}(z) \\
R_{\text {hyp }, y_{2}}^{0}(z)
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{c}
2 v_{2} x_{1}^{2} y_{1}+2 v_{02} y_{1} x_{2}^{2}+v_{11} x_{1} x_{2} y_{2} \\
-2 v_{2} x_{1} y_{1}^{2}-2 v_{20} x_{1} y_{2}^{2}-v_{11} y_{1} x_{2} y_{2} \\
2 v_{2} y_{2} x_{2}^{2}+2 v_{20} x_{1}^{2} y_{2}+v_{11} x_{1} y_{1} x_{2} \\
-2 v_{2} x_{2} y_{2}^{2}-v_{02} y_{1}^{2} x_{2}-v_{11} x_{1} y_{1} y_{2}
\end{array}\right)
$$

and $R_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{1}$ is the remainder and satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
R_{\mathrm{hyp}, x_{i}}^{1}=\mathcal{O}\left(x^{3} y^{2}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad R_{\mathrm{hyp}, y_{i}}^{1}=\mathcal{O}\left(x^{2} y^{3}\right) \tag{5.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Moreover, the function $\tilde{\Psi}_{\text {hyp }}=\left(\widetilde{\Psi}_{\mathrm{hyp}, x_{1}}, \widetilde{\Psi}_{\text {hyp }, y_{1}}, \tilde{\Psi}_{\text {hyp }, x_{2}}, \widetilde{\Psi}_{\text {hyp }, y_{2}}\right)$ satisfies

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \widetilde{\Psi}_{\text {hyp }, x_{1}}(z)=\mathcal{O}\left(x_{1}^{3}, x_{1} y_{1}, x_{1}\left(x_{2}^{2}+y_{2}^{2}\right), y_{1} y_{2}\left(x_{2}+y_{2}\right)\right), \\
& \widetilde{\Psi}_{\text {hyp }, y_{1}}(z)=\mathcal{O}\left(y_{1}^{3}, x_{1} y_{1}, y_{1}\left(x_{2}^{2}+y_{2}^{2}\right), x_{1} x_{2}\left(x_{2}+y_{2}\right)\right), \\
& \widetilde{\Psi}_{\text {hyp }, x_{2}}(z)=\mathcal{O}\left(x_{2}^{3}, x_{2} y_{2}, x_{2}\left(x_{1}^{2}+y_{1}^{2}\right), y_{1} y_{2}\left(x_{1}+y_{1}\right)\right), \\
& \widetilde{\Psi}_{\text {hyp }, y_{2}}(z)=\mathcal{O}\left(y_{2}^{3}, x_{2} y_{2}, y_{2}\left(x_{1}^{2}+y_{1}^{2}\right), x_{1} x_{2}\left(x_{1}+y_{1}\right)\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

### 5.2. The local map for the Hyperbolic Toy Model in the normal form variables

Recall that our goal in this step of the proof is to study the evolution of points with initial conditions in a certain set near the section $\Sigma_{j}^{\mathrm{in}}$. More specifically, in formulas (4.30) and (4.31) we have defined sets $\mathcal{N}_{j}^{-} \subset \mathcal{N}_{j}^{+}$. We set elliptic modes $c=0$ and shall study the set $\mathcal{N}_{j}^{\prime}$ satisfying

$$
\mathcal{N}_{j}^{-} \cap\{c=0\} \subset \mathcal{N}_{j}^{\prime} \subset \mathcal{N}_{j}^{+} \cap\{c=0\}
$$

Since the analysis is done in normal coordinates $\Psi_{\text {hyp }}:(x, y) \rightarrow(p, q)$, we study a set $\widehat{\mathcal{N}}_{j}$ such that $\Psi_{\text {hyp }}^{-1}\left(\mathcal{N}_{j}^{\prime}\right) \subset \widehat{\mathcal{N}}_{j}$. To define this set we need to fix several parameters and define several objects.

[^3]Let $C^{(j)}$ be the constant from Lemma 4.7. Recall that in Definition 4.5 we have defined a ( $\sigma, \delta, K$ )-recursive multi-parameter set $\mathcal{I}_{j}$. Its description includes parameters $M_{\text {hyp }}^{(j)}$ used below. The parameter $K$ depends on $\sigma$ and we keep this dependence in the notation: $K_{\sigma}$. Denote the inverse of the map $\Psi$ from Lemma 5.1 by

$$
\Upsilon:=\mathrm{Id}+\widetilde{\Upsilon}:=\Psi_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{-1}=: \mathrm{Id}+\left(\widetilde{\Upsilon}_{x_{1}}, \widetilde{\Upsilon}_{y_{1}}, \widetilde{\Upsilon}_{x_{2}}, \widetilde{\Upsilon}_{y_{2}}\right)
$$

Define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widehat{C}^{(j)}:=C^{(j)}\left(1+\partial_{x_{1}} \tilde{\Upsilon}_{x_{1}}(0, \sigma, 0,0)\right) \tag{5.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Notice that $\widehat{C}^{(j)}=C^{(j)}(1+\mathcal{O}(\sigma))$. Define

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{1}(\sigma)=\Upsilon_{y_{1}}(0, \sigma, 0,0) \tag{5.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Observe that $f_{1}(\sigma)=\sigma+\mathcal{O}\left(\sigma^{3}\right)$ and the section $\left\{y_{1}=f_{1}(\sigma)\right\}$ approximates the image of the section $\Upsilon\left(\Sigma_{j}^{\mathrm{in}}\right)$. Now we can define the set of points whose evolution under the local map we shall analyze:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \widehat{\mathcal{N}}_{j}=\left\{\left|x_{1}+\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta)\right|\right. \leq \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta K_{\sigma},\left|x_{2}-x_{2}^{*}\right| \leq 2 M_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)} \frac{\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}}{\ln (1 / \delta)} \\
&\left.\left|y_{1}-f_{1}(\sigma)\right| \leq K_{\sigma} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta),\left|y_{2}\right| \leq 2 M_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}\right\} \tag{5.8}
\end{align*}
$$

where the constant $x_{2}^{*}$ will be defined later in this section. It turns out that a proper choice of $x_{2}^{*}$ leads to a cancelation in the evolution of the $x_{1}$ coordinate (described in Section 2.2 for the simplified model). This cancelation is crucial to obtaining good estimates for the $\operatorname{map} \mathcal{B}_{\text {loc }}^{j}$.

We also define

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{2}(\sigma)=\Upsilon_{x_{2}}(0,0, \sigma, 0) \tag{5.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

By analogy with $f_{1}(\sigma)$ notice that the section $\left\{x_{2}=f_{2}(\sigma)\right\}$ approximates the image of the section $\Upsilon\left(\Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}\right)$ with $\Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}=\left\{p_{2}=\sigma\right\}$. Later we need to compute an approximate transition time $T_{j}\left(x_{2}\right)$ from near $\Upsilon\left(\Sigma_{j}^{\text {in }}\right)$ to $\Upsilon\left(\Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}\right)$. We use $f_{2}$ to do that. Notice that the $x_{2}$ coordinate behaves almost linearly as

$$
x_{2} \sim x_{2}^{0} e^{\sqrt{3} t}
$$

Therefore, for an orbit to reach $\left\{x_{2}=f_{2}(\sigma)\right\}$ it takes an approximate time

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{j}\left(x_{2}^{0}\right)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \ln \left(\frac{f_{2}(\sigma)}{x_{2}^{0}}\right) \tag{5.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that this time is defined for any $x_{2}^{0}>0$. We will see that the $x_{2}^{0}$ coordinate behaves like $x_{2}^{0} \sim\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}$, and therefore $T_{j}$ behaves like

$$
T_{j} \sim \ln \frac{1}{\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta}
$$

Even if $x_{2}$ behaves approximately as for a linear system, this is not the case for the other variables, as we have explained in Section 2.2 with a simplified model. Indeed, if one first considers the linear part of the vector field (5.1), omitting the dependence on $\widehat{C}^{(j)}$, the transition map sends points

$$
\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, x_{2}, y_{2}\right) \sim\left(\mathcal{O}(\delta \ln (1 / \delta)), \mathcal{O}(\sigma), \mathcal{O}\left(\delta^{1 / 2}\right), \mathcal{O}\left(\delta^{1 / 2}\right)\right)
$$

to

$$
\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, x_{2}, y_{2}\right) \sim\left(\mathcal{O}\left(\delta^{1 / 2} \ln (1 / \delta)\right), \mathcal{O}\left(\delta^{1 / 2}\right), \mathcal{O}(\sigma), \mathcal{O}(\delta)\right)
$$

However, the resonance implies a certain deviation from the heteroclinic orbits. Indeed, one can see that typically, the image point is of the form

$$
\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, x_{2}, y_{2}\right) \sim\left(\mathcal{O}\left(\delta^{1 / 2} \ln (1 / \delta)\right), \mathcal{O}\left(\delta^{1 / 2}\right), \mathcal{O}(\sigma), \mathcal{O}(\delta \ln (1 / \delta))\right)
$$

This apparently small deviation, after undoing the normal form, would imply a considerably big deviation from the heteroclinic orbit and would lead to very bad estimates. Nevertheless, if one chooses $x_{2}$ carefully in terms of $x_{1}$ and $y_{1}$, one can obtain a cancelation that leads to an image point of the form

$$
\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, x_{2}, y_{2}\right) \sim\left(\mathcal{O}\left(\delta^{1 / 2}\right), \mathcal{O}\left(\delta^{1 / 2}\right), \mathcal{O}(\sigma), \mathcal{O}(\delta \ln (1 / \delta))\right)
$$

Since the points we are dealing with belong to the set $\tilde{\mathcal{N}}_{j}$ defined in (5.8), this cancelation boils down to choosing a suitable constant $x_{2}^{*}$. The next lemma shows that a particular choice of $x_{2}^{*}$ leads to a cancelation that allows us to obtain good estimates for the saddle map in spite of the resonance. The choice we make is essentially the same as the one in Section 2.2 for the simplified model that has been considered in that section.

Lemma 5.2. Consider the flow $\Phi_{t}^{\text {hyp }}$ associated to (5.2) and a point $z^{0} \in \widehat{\mathcal{N}}_{j}$. Let $x_{2}^{*}$ be the unique positive solution of

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(x_{2}^{*}\right)^{2} T_{j}\left(x_{2}^{*}\right)=\frac{\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta)}{2 v_{02} f_{1}(\sigma)} . \tag{5.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then for $\delta$ and $\sigma$ small enough, the point

$$
z^{f}=\Phi_{T_{j}}^{\mathrm{hyp}}\left(z^{0}\right)
$$

where $T_{j}=T_{j}\left(x_{2}^{0}\right)$ is the time defined in (5.10), satisfies

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\left|x_{1}^{f}\right| \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}, & \left|y_{1}^{f}\right| \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}, \\
\left|x_{2}^{f}-f_{2}(\sigma)\right| \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta), & \left|y_{2}^{f}+\frac{f_{1}(\sigma)}{f_{2}(\sigma)} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta)\right| \leq K_{\sigma} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta .
\end{array}
$$

Remark 5.3. The particular choice of $x_{2}^{*}$ being a solution (5.11) will ensure a cancelation crucial to obtaining good estimates for the local map.

Equation (5.11) has real solutions because $\nu_{02}>0$ (see Remark 4.2) and $x_{1}<0$ (and $p_{1}<0$ in the original variables, see Remark 4.4). Indeed, if $x_{1}>0$ and $x_{1} \sim$ $\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta)$ we have

$$
\left(x_{2}^{*}\right)^{2} T_{j}\left(x_{2}^{*}\right)=-\frac{\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta)}{2 v_{02} f_{1}(\sigma)}
$$

If there is no solution to this equation, we cannot attain the desired cancelation.
Let us point out that taking into account the estimates for the points in $\widehat{\mathcal{N}}^{(j)}$, the definition of $T_{j}$ in (5.10) and condition (4.33), one can deduce that condition (5.11) implies

$$
\left|x_{2}^{*}\right| \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{(1-r) / 2},
$$

and then

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{j}\left(x_{2}^{0}\right) \leq K_{\sigma} \ln (1 / \delta) . \tag{5.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

We use this estimate throughout the proof of Lemma 5.2. Note also that for the modes ( $x_{1}^{f}, y_{1}^{f}$ ) we just need upper bounds, since after the passage of saddle $j$, the associated mode will become elliptic and therefore we will not need accurate estimates anymore.

Proof of Lemma 5.2. We prove the lemma using a fixed point argument. We look for a contractive operator using the variation of constants formula. Namely, we perform the change of coordinates

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{i}=e^{\sqrt{3} t} u_{i}, \quad y_{i}=e^{-\sqrt{3} t} v_{i} \tag{5.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

and then we obtain the integral equations

$$
\begin{align*}
& u_{i}=x_{i}^{0}+\int_{0}^{T} e^{-\sqrt{3} t} R_{\mathrm{hyp}, x_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}\right) d t \\
& v_{i}=y_{i}^{0}+\int_{0}^{T} e^{\sqrt{3} t} R_{\mathrm{hyp}, y_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}\right) d t \tag{5.14}
\end{align*}
$$

In the linear case $u_{i}$ 's and $v_{i}$ 's are fixed. We use these variables to carry out a fixed point argument. We define a contractive operator in two steps. This approach is inspired by Shilnikov [Šil67].

First we define an auxiliary (noncontractive) operator as follows:

$$
\mathcal{F}_{\mathrm{hyp}}=\left(\mathcal{F}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{1}}, \mathcal{F}_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{1}}, \mathcal{F}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{2}}, \mathcal{F}_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{2}}\right),
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathcal{F}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{i}}(u, v)=x_{i}^{0}+\int_{0}^{T} e^{-\sqrt{3} t} R_{\mathrm{hyp}, x_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}\right) d t, \\
& \mathcal{F}_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{i}}(u, v)=y_{i}^{0}+\int_{0}^{T} e^{\sqrt{3} t} R_{\mathrm{hyp}, y_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}\right) d t . \tag{5.15}
\end{align*}
$$

One can easily see that in the $u_{1}$ and $v_{2}$ components the main terms are not given by the initial condition but by the integral terms. This indicates that the dynamics near the saddle is not well approximated by the linearized dynamics and the operator is not contractive.

Following ideas from Shilnikov [Šil67], we slightly modify two of the components of $\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }}$ to obtain a contractive operator. We define a new operator

$$
\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }}=\left(\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}, \widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}, \widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}}, \widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}}\right)
$$

by

$$
\begin{align*}
& \widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}\left(u_{1}, v_{1}, u_{2}, v_{2}\right)=\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}\left(u_{1}, \mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}\left(u_{1}, v_{1}, u_{2}, v_{2}\right), \mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}}\left(u_{1}, v_{1}, u_{2}, v_{2}\right), v_{2}\right), \\
& \widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}\left(u_{1}, v_{1}, u_{2}, v_{2}\right)=\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}\left(u_{1}, v_{1}, u_{2}, v_{2}\right), \\
& \widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}}\left(u_{1}, v_{1}, u_{2}, v_{2}\right)=\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}}\left(u_{1}, v_{1}, u_{2}, v_{2}\right), \\
& \widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}}\left(u_{1}, v_{1}, u_{2}, v_{2}\right)=\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}}\left(u_{1}, \mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}\left(u_{1}, v_{1}, u_{2}, v_{2}\right), \mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}}\left(u_{1}, v_{1}, u_{2}, v_{2}\right), v_{2}\right) . \tag{5.16}
\end{align*}
$$

Note that the fixed points of these operators are exactly the same as the fixed points of $\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }}$. Thus, the fixed points of the operator $\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }}$ are solutions of equation (5.14).

It turns out that the operator $\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }}$ is contractive in a suitable Banach space. We define the following weighted norms. Let $\|\cdot\|_{\infty}$ be the standard supremum norm. Then define

$$
\begin{align*}
& \|h\|_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}=\sup _{t \in\left[0, T_{j}\right]}\left|\left(-\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta)+2 v_{02} f_{1}(\sigma)\left(x_{2}^{*}\right)^{2} t+\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{-1} h(t)\right| \\
& \|h\|_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}=f_{1}(\sigma)^{-1}\|h\|_{\infty},  \tag{5.17}\\
& \|h\|_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}}=\left(x_{2}^{*}\right)^{-1}\|h\|_{\infty}, \quad\|h\|_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}}=\left(\left(y_{1}^{0}\right)^{2} x_{2}^{0} T_{j}\right)^{-1}\|h\|_{\infty}
\end{align*}
$$

and the norm

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|(u, v)\|_{*}=\sup _{i=1,2}\left\{\left\|u_{i}\right\|_{\text {hyp }, u_{i}},\left\|v_{i}\right\|_{\text {hyp }, v_{i}}\right\} . \tag{5.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

This gives rise to the following Banach space:

$$
\mathcal{Y}_{\text {hyp }}=\left\{(u, v):[0, T] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{4}:\|(u, v)\|_{*}<\infty\right\} .
$$

The contractivity of $\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }}$ is a consequence of the following two auxiliary propositions.
Proposition 5.4. Assume (5.11) holds. Then there exists a constant $\kappa_{0}>0$ independent of $\sigma, \delta$ and $j$ such that for $\delta$ and $\sigma$ small enough, the operator $\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }}$ satisfies

$$
\|\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}(0)\|_{*} \leq \kappa_{0}
$$

Proposition 5.5. Consider $w, w^{\prime} \in B\left(2 \kappa_{0}\right) \subset \mathcal{Y}_{\text {hyp }}$ and assume (5.11) holds. Then taking $\delta \ll \sigma$, the operator $\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }}$ satisfies

$$
\left\|\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }}(w)-\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }}\left(w^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*} \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta)\left\|w-w^{\prime}\right\|_{*} .
$$

These two propositions show that $\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }}$ is contractive from $B\left(2 \kappa_{0}\right) \subset \mathcal{Y}_{\text {hyp }}$ to itself. Moreover, using them we can deduce accurate estimates for the image point. We prove here Proposition 5.4. The proof of Proposition 5.5 is deferred to the end of the section.
Proof of Proposition 5.4. We bound each mode separately. For $\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}$ and $\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}}$, we have

$$
\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{1}}(0)=y_{1}^{0} \quad \text { and } \quad \widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{2}}(0)=x_{2}^{0},
$$

and therefore they satisfy the desired bounds. Now we bound the first iteration for $u_{1}$. Here we use the particular choice of $x_{2}^{0}$ in terms of $\left(x_{1}^{0}, y_{1}^{0}\right)$ made in (5.11) to obtain the desired cancelations (see Remark 5.3). Indeed, taking into account the properties of $R_{\mathrm{hyp}, x_{1}}$ given in Lemma 5.1, the first iteration is just

$$
\begin{aligned}
\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}(0)(t) & =x_{1}^{0}+\int_{0}^{t}\left(2 \nu_{02} y_{1}^{0}\left(x_{2}^{0}\right)^{2}+\mathcal{O}\left(\left(y_{1}^{0}\right)^{2}\left(x_{2}^{0}\right)^{3}\right)\right) d t^{\prime} \\
& =x_{1}^{0}+2 \nu_{02} y_{1}^{0}\left(x_{2}^{0}\right)^{2} t+\mathcal{O}\left(\left(y_{1}^{0}\right)^{2}\left(x_{2}^{0}\right)^{3}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, taking into account that $z^{0} \in \widehat{\mathcal{N}}_{j}$ (see (5.8)) and also (5.12), we have

$$
\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}(0)(t)=-\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta)+2 \nu_{02} f_{1}(\sigma)\left(x_{2}^{*}\right)^{2} t+\mathcal{O}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)
$$

Thus, applying the norm given in (5.17), we see that there exists a constant $\kappa_{0}>0$ such that

$$
\left\|\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}(0)\right\|_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}} \leq \kappa_{0} .
$$

To bound the first iteration for $v_{2}$, we just have to take into account that it is given by

$$
\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{2}}(0)(t)=y_{2}^{0}-\int_{0}^{t}\left(2 v_{02} x_{2}^{0}\left(y_{1}^{0}\right)^{2}+\mathcal{O}\left(\left(y_{1}^{0}\right)^{3}\left(x_{2}^{0}\right)^{2}\right)\right) d t^{\prime}
$$

Then, recalling that $z^{0} \in \widehat{\mathcal{N}}_{j}$,

$$
\left|\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{2}}(0)(t)\right| \leq 4 \nu_{02} x_{2}^{0}\left(y_{1}^{0}\right)^{2} T_{j},
$$

which gives

$$
\left\|\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}}(0)\right\|_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}} \leq 4 v_{02}
$$

Therefore, we can conclude that $\|\tilde{\mathcal{F}}(0)\|_{*} \leq \kappa_{0}$ for a certain constant $\kappa_{0}>0$ independent of $\delta, \sigma$ and $j$.
The previous two propositions show that $\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }}$ is contractive from $B\left(2 \kappa_{0}\right) \subset \mathcal{Y}_{\text {hyp }}$ to itself. Therefore, it has a unique fixed point in $B\left(2 \kappa_{0}\right) \subset \mathcal{Y}_{\text {hyp }}$ which we denote by $w^{*}$. Now it only remains to deduce the bounds for $z^{f}$ stated in Lemma 5.2. To this end, we use the contractivity of the operator $\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }}$ and we undo the change (5.13). Using the definition of $T_{j}$ in (5.10), we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
x_{2}^{f} & =e^{\sqrt{3} t_{j}} v_{2}\left(T_{j}\right)=\frac{f_{2}(\sigma)}{x_{2}^{0}}\left(x_{2}^{0}+\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}}\left(w^{*}\right)\left(T_{j}\right)-\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}}(0)\left(T_{j}\right)\right) \\
& =f_{2}(\sigma)\left(1+\mathcal{O}\left(\left(\sigma \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta)\right)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Analogously, one can see that

$$
\left|y_{1}^{f}\right| \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}
$$

To obtain the estimates for $x_{1}^{f}$, note that the particular choice for $x_{2}^{*}$ in (5.11) implies that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|u_{1}\left(T_{j}\right)\right| & \leq\left|\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}(0)\left(T_{j}\right)\right|+\left|\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{1}}\left(w^{*}\right)\left(T_{j}\right)-\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{1}}(0)\left(T_{j}\right)\right| \\
& \leq K_{\sigma} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\left(1+\mathcal{O}_{\sigma}\left(\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta)\right)\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Then, undoing the change of coordinates (5.13) and using the definition of $T_{j}$ in (5.10), one obtains

$$
\left|x_{1}^{f}\right| \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} .
$$

Finally, proceeding analogously, and taking into account (5.11) again, one can see that

$$
y_{2}^{f}=-\frac{f_{1}(\sigma)}{f_{2}(\sigma)} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta)\left(1+\mathcal{O}_{\sigma}\left(\frac{1}{\ln (1 / \delta)}\right)\right)
$$

which completes the proof of Proposition 5.2.
Now, it only remains to prove Proposition 5.5.
Proof of Proposition 5.5. To compute the Lipschitz constant we first need upper bounds for $w \in B\left(2 \kappa_{0}\right) \subset \mathcal{Y}_{\text {hyp }}$ in the supremum norm $\|\cdot\|_{\infty}$. They can be deduced from the definition of the norms $\|\cdot\|_{\text {hyp,* }}$ in (5.17) and the fact that $z^{0} \in \widetilde{\mathcal{N}}^{(j)}$ (see (5.8)). We have

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\left|u_{1}\right| \leq K_{\sigma} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta), & \left|u_{2}\right| \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}  \tag{5.19}\\
\left|v_{1}\right| \leq K \sigma, & \left|v_{2}\right| \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln (1 / \delta)
\end{array}
$$

where $K>0$ is a constant independent of $\sigma$.
We use these bounds to obtain the Lipschitz constant. We start by computing the Lipschitz constant of $\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}=\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}$ and $\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}}=\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}}$; then we will compute the other two.

Using the properties of $R_{\text {hyp }, y_{1}}$ given in Lemma 5.1, (5.12) and the bounds just obtained, one can easily see that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|\mathcal{F}_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{1}}(u, v)-\mathcal{F}_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{1}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}\right)\right| \\
& \leq \int_{0}^{T_{j}} \mathcal{O}(u v) \sum_{i=1,2}\left|v_{i}-v_{i}^{\prime}\right| d t+\int_{0}^{T_{j}} \mathcal{O}\left(v^{2}\right) \sum_{i=1,2}\left|u_{i}-u_{i}^{\prime}\right| d t \\
& \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln (1 / \delta) \sum_{i=1,2}\left\|v_{i}-v_{i}^{\prime}\right\|_{\infty}+K_{\sigma} \ln (1 / \delta) \sum_{i=1,2}\left\|u_{i}-u_{i}^{\prime}\right\|_{\infty} \\
& \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln (1 / \delta) \sum_{i=1,2}\left\|v_{i}-v_{i}^{\prime}\right\|_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{i}}+K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln (1 / \delta) \sum_{i=1,2}\left\|u_{i}-u_{i}^{\prime}\right\|_{\text {hyp }, u_{i}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that we are abusing notation since inside the $\mathcal{O}(\cdot)$ the dependence of the size on $(u, v)$ means dependence on both $(u, v)$ and $\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}\right)$. We do not write the full dependence since both terms have the same size. Applying the norms defined in (5.17), we get

$$
\left\|\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}(u, v)-\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}} \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln (1 / \delta)\left\|(u, v)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*}
$$

Now we bound the Lipschitz constant of $\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}}$. Proceeding as in the previous case one obtains

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|\mathcal{F}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{2}}(u, v)-\mathcal{F}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{2}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}\right)\right| \\
& \quad \leq \int_{0}^{T_{j}} \mathcal{O}(u v) \sum_{i=1,2}\left|u_{i}-u_{i}^{\prime}\right| d t+\int_{0}^{T_{j}} \mathcal{O}\left(u^{2}\right) \sum_{i=1,2}\left|v_{i}-v_{i}^{\prime}\right| d t \\
& \quad \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln (1 / \delta) \sum_{i=1,2}\left\|u_{i}-u_{i}^{\prime}\right\|_{\infty}+K_{\sigma} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta) \sum_{i=1,2}\left\|v_{i}-v_{i}^{\prime}\right\|_{\infty} \\
& \quad \leq K_{\sigma} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta) \sum_{i=1,2}\left\|u_{i}-u_{i}^{\prime}\right\|_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{i}}+K_{\sigma} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta) \sum_{i=1,2}\left\|v_{i}-v_{i}^{\prime}\right\|_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{i}}
\end{aligned}
$$

and thus

$$
\left\|\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}}(u, v)-\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}} \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln (1 / \delta)\left\|(u, v)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*}
$$

To bound the Lipschitz constant of $\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}$ we use its definition in (5.16). First we study $\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}(w)-\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}\left(w^{\prime}\right)$. We proceed as for $\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}}$ but we have to be more accurate. We obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}(u, v)-\mathcal{F}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{1}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}\right)\right| \\
& \quad \leq \int_{0}^{T_{j}} \mathcal{O}(u v) \sum_{i=1,2}\left|u_{i}-u_{i}^{\prime}\right| d t+\int_{0}^{T_{j}} \mathcal{O}\left(u^{2}\right) \sum_{i=1,2}\left|v_{i}-v_{i}^{\prime}\right| d t \\
& \leq \\
& \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln (1 / \delta) \sum_{i=1,2}\left\|u_{i}-u_{i}^{\prime}\right\|_{\infty}+K_{\sigma} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta) \sum_{i=1,2}\left\|v_{i}-v_{i}^{\prime}\right\|_{\infty} \\
& \leq \\
& \quad K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta)\left\|u_{1}-u_{1}^{\prime}\right\|_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}+K_{\sigma} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta)\left\|u_{2}-u_{2}^{\prime}\right\|_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}} \\
& \quad+K_{\sigma} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta)\left\|v_{1}-v_{1}^{\prime}\right\|_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}+K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta)\left\|v_{2}-v_{2}^{\prime}\right\|_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, taking into account that for $\delta$ small enough,

$$
\sup _{t \in\left[0, T_{j}\left(x_{2}^{0}\right)\right]}\left|\frac{1}{-\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta)+2 v_{02} f_{1}(\sigma)\left(x_{2}^{*}\right)^{2} t+\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta}\right| \leq \frac{2}{\widehat{C}^{(j) \delta}},
$$

one can deduce that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}(u, v)-\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}} \leq & K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta)\left\|u_{1}-u_{1}^{\prime}\right\|_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}} \\
& +K_{\sigma} \ln (1 / \delta)\left\|u_{2}-u_{2}^{\prime}\right\|_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}} \\
& +K_{\sigma} \ln (1 / \delta)\left\|v_{1}-v_{1}^{\prime}\right\|_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}} \\
& +K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta)\left\|v_{2}-v_{2}^{\prime}\right\|_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, to obtain the Lipschitz constant for $\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}$, it only remains to use its definition in (5.16) and the Lipschitz constants already found for $\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}$ and $\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}}$ to obtain

$$
\left\|\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}(u, v)-\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{1}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{1}} \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta)\left\|(u, v)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*}
$$

Proceeding analogously, one can also see that

$$
\left\|\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{2}}(u, v)-\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{2}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{2}} \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln (1 / \delta)\left\|(u, v)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*}
$$

This completes the proof.

## 6. The local map: proof of Lemma 4.7

The analysis of Section 5 describes the dynamics of the Hyperbolic Toy Model (5.1). Now we add the elliptic modes and consider the whole vector field (4.14). Our goal is to study the map $\mathcal{B}_{\text {loc }}^{j}$. The key point of this study is that the elliptic modes remain almost constant through the saddle map and do not exert much influence on the hyperbolic ones. In other words, there is an almost product structure. This allows us to extend the results obtained for the Hyperbolic Toy Model (5.1) in Section 5 to the general system.

As a first step we perform the change obtained in Lemma 5.1 by means of a normal form procedure for the Hyperbolic Toy Model (5.1). The proof of this lemma is straightforward, taking into account the form of the vector field (4.14) and the properties of $\Psi_{\text {hyp }}$ given in Lemma 5.1.

Lemma 6.1. Let $\Psi_{\mathrm{hyp}}$ be the map defined in Lemma 5.1. Then an application of the change of coordinates

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, p_{2}, q_{2}, c\right)=\left(\Psi_{\mathrm{hyp}}\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, x_{2}, y_{2}\right), c\right) \tag{6.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

to the vector field (4.14) leads to a vector field of the form

$$
\begin{aligned}
\dot{z} & =D z+R_{\mathrm{hyp}}(z)+R_{\mathrm{mix}, z}(z, c) \\
\dot{c}_{k} & =i c_{k}+\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}(c)+R_{\mathrm{mix}, c}(z, c)
\end{aligned}
$$

where $z$ denotes $z=\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, x_{2}, y_{2}\right), D=\operatorname{diag}(\sqrt{3},-\sqrt{3}, \sqrt{3},-\sqrt{3}), R_{\text {hyp }}$ has been given in Lemma 5.1, $\mathcal{Z}_{\text {ell, } c_{k}}$ is defined in (4.19), and $R_{\text {mix, } z}$ and $R_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{k}}$ are defined as

$$
\begin{aligned}
& R_{\mathrm{mix}, x_{1}}=A_{x_{1}}(z) \bar{c}_{j-2}^{2}+\bar{a}_{x_{1}}(z) c_{j-2}^{2}+\sqrt{3} \sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2} \Psi_{x_{1}}(z), \\
& R_{\mathrm{mix}, y_{1}}=A_{y_{1}}(z) \bar{c}_{j-2}^{2}+\bar{a}_{y_{1}}(z) c_{j-2}^{2}+\sqrt{3} \sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2} \Psi_{y_{1}}(z), \\
& R_{\mathrm{mix}, x_{2}}=A_{x_{2}}(z) \bar{c}_{j+2}^{2}+\bar{a}_{x_{2}}(z) c_{j+2}^{2}+\sqrt{3} \sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2} \Psi_{x_{2}}(z),
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
R_{\mathrm{mix}, y_{2}} & =A_{y_{2}}(z) \bar{c}_{j+2}^{2}+\bar{a}_{y_{2}}(z) c_{j+2}^{2}+\sqrt{3} \sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2} \Psi_{y_{2}}(z) \\
R_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{k}} & =i \sqrt{3} c_{k} P(z) \quad \text { for } m \neq j \pm 2 \\
R_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{j \pm 2}} & =i \sqrt{3} c_{j \pm 2} P(z)-i \bar{c}_{j \pm 2} Q_{ \pm}(z)
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\Psi_{\mathrm{hyp}, z}$ are the functions defined in Lemma 5.1, the $A_{z}$ satisfy

$$
A_{x_{i}}=\mathcal{O}\left(x_{i}, y_{i}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad A_{y_{i}}=\mathcal{O}\left(x_{i}, y_{i}\right)
$$

and $P$ and $Q_{ \pm}$satisfy

$$
P(z)=\mathcal{O}\left(x_{1} y_{1}, x_{2} y_{2}, z_{1}^{2} z_{2}^{2}\right), \quad Q_{-}(z)=\mathcal{O}\left(x_{1}, y_{1}\right), \quad Q_{+}(z)=\mathcal{O}\left(x_{2}, y_{2}\right)
$$

One can easily see that for this system there is a rather strong interaction between the hyperbolic and the elliptic modes due to the terms $R_{\text {mix }, x_{i}}$ and $R_{\text {mix }, y_{i}}$. The importance of these terms can be seen as follows. The manifold $\{x=0, y=0\}$ is normally hyperbolic [Fen74, Fen77, HPS77] for the linear truncation of the vector field obtained in Lemma 6.1 and its stable and unstable manifolds are defined as $\{x=0\}$ and $\{y=0\}$. For the full vector field, the manifold $\{x=0, y=0\}$ is persistent. Moreover it is still normally hyperbolic thanks to [Fen74, Fen77, HPS77]. Nevertheless, the associated invariant manifolds deviate from $\{x=0\}$ and $\{y=0\}$ due to the terms $R_{\text {mix }, x_{i}}$ and $R_{\text {mix }, y_{i}}$. To overcome this problem, we slightly modify the change (6.1) to straighten these invariant manifolds completely.

Lemma 6.2. There exists a change of coordinates of the form

$$
\begin{align*}
\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, p_{2}, q_{2}, c\right) & =\left(\Psi\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, x_{2}, y_{2}, c\right), c\right) \\
& =\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, x_{2}, y_{2}, c\right)+\left(\tilde{\Psi}\left(x_{1}, y_{1}, x_{2}, y_{2}, c\right), 0\right) \tag{6.2}
\end{align*}
$$

which transforms the vector field (4.14) into a vector field of the form

$$
\begin{align*}
\dot{z} & =D z+R_{\mathrm{hyp}}(z)+\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, z}(z, c),  \tag{6.3}\\
\dot{c}_{k} & =i c_{k}+\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}(c)+\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{k}}(z, c),
\end{align*}
$$

where $R_{\mathrm{hyp}}$ and $\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{ell}}$ are the functions defined in (5.3) and (4.19) respectively, and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \widetilde{R}_{\text {mix }, x_{1}}=B_{x_{1}}(z, c) \bar{c}_{j-2}^{2}+\overline{B_{x_{1}}(z, c)} c_{j-2}^{2}+\sqrt{3} \sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2} C_{x_{1}}(z, c), \\
& \widetilde{R}_{\text {mix }, y_{1}}=B_{y_{1}}(z, c) \bar{c}_{j-2}^{2}+\overline{B_{y_{1}}(z, c)} c_{j-2}^{2}+\sqrt{3} \sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2} C_{y_{1}}(z, c), \\
& \widetilde{R}_{\text {mix }, x_{2}}=B_{x_{2}}(z, c) \bar{c}_{j+2}^{2}+\overline{B_{x_{2}}(z, c)} c_{j+2}^{2}+\sqrt{3} \sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2} C_{x_{2}}(z, c),
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, y_{2}} & =B_{y_{2}}(z, c) \bar{c}_{j+2}^{2}+\overline{B_{y_{2}}(z, c)} c_{j+2}^{2}+\sqrt{3} \sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2} C_{y_{2}}(z, c), \\
\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{k}} & =i \sqrt{3} c_{k} \widetilde{P}(z, c) \quad \text { for } k \neq j \pm 2 \\
\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{j \pm 2}} & =i \sqrt{3} c_{j \pm 2} \widetilde{P}(z, c)-i \bar{c}_{j \pm 2} \widetilde{Q}_{ \pm}(z, c),
\end{aligned}
$$

where the functions $B_{z}$ and $C_{z}$ satisfy

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
B_{x_{1}}(z, c)=\mathcal{O}\left(x_{1}+y_{1} x_{2} z_{2}\right), & B_{x_{2}}(z, c)=\mathcal{O}\left(x_{2}+y_{2} x_{1} z_{1}\right), \\
B_{y_{1}}(z, c)=\mathcal{O}\left(y_{1}+x_{1} y_{2} z_{2}\right), & B_{y_{2}}(z, c)=\mathcal{O}\left(y_{2}+x_{2} y_{1} z_{1}\right), \\
C_{x_{1}}(z, c)=\mathcal{O}\left(x_{1}+y_{1} x_{2} z_{2}\right), & C_{x_{2}}(z, c)=\mathcal{O}\left(x_{2}+y_{2} x_{1} z_{1}\right) \\
C_{y_{1}}(z, c)=\mathcal{O}\left(y_{1}+x_{1} y_{2} z_{2}\right), & C_{y_{2}}(z, c)=\mathcal{O}\left(y_{2}+x_{2} y_{1} z_{1}\right),
\end{array}
$$

and $\widetilde{P}$ and $\widetilde{Q}_{ \pm}$satisfy

$$
\widetilde{P}(z, c)=\mathcal{O}\left(x_{1} y_{1}, x_{2} y_{2}, z_{1}^{2} z_{2}^{2}\right), \quad \widetilde{Q}_{-}(z, c)=\mathcal{O}\left(x_{1}, y_{1}\right), \quad \widetilde{Q}_{+}(z)=\mathcal{O}\left(x_{2}, y_{2}\right)
$$

Moreover, the function $\widetilde{\Psi}$ satisfies

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \widetilde{\Psi}_{x_{1}}=\mathcal{O}\left(x_{1}^{3}, x_{1} y_{1}, x_{1}\left(x_{2}^{2}+y_{2}^{2}\right), y_{1} y_{2}\left(x_{2}+y_{2}\right), c_{j-2}^{2} y_{1}, \sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2} y_{1} y_{2}^{2}\right), \\
& \widetilde{\Psi}_{y_{1}}=\mathcal{O}\left(y_{1}^{3}, x_{1} y_{1}, y_{1}\left(x_{2}^{2}+y_{2}^{2}\right), x_{1} x_{2}\left(x_{2}+y_{2}\right), c_{j-2}^{2} x_{1}, \sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2} x_{1} x_{2}^{2}\right), \\
& \widetilde{\Psi}_{x_{2}}=\mathcal{O}\left(x_{2}^{3}, x_{2} y_{2}, x_{2}\left(x_{1}^{2}+y_{1}^{2}\right), y_{1} y_{2}\left(x_{1}+y_{1}\right), c_{j+2}^{2} y_{1}, \sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2} y_{2} y_{1}^{2}\right), \\
& \widetilde{\Psi}_{y_{2}}=\mathcal{O}\left(y_{2}^{3}, x_{2} y_{2}, y_{2}\left(x_{1}^{2}+y_{1}^{2}\right), x_{1} x_{2}\left(x_{1}+y_{1}\right), c_{j+2}^{2} x_{1}, \sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2} x_{2} x_{1}^{2}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof. It is enough to compose two changes of coordinates. The first is the change (6.2) considered in Lemma 6.1. The second is the one which straightens the invariant manifolds of a normally hyperbolic invariant manifold [Fen74, Fen77, HPS77]. Then, to obtain the required estimates, it suffices to combine Lemmas 5.1 and 6.1 with the standard results about normally hyperbolic invariant manifolds.
After performing this change of coordinates, the stable and unstable invariant manifolds of $\{x=0, y=0\}$ are straightened. This will facilitate the study of the transition map close to the saddle.

As in Section 5, we define a set $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_{j}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Upsilon\left(\mathcal{V}_{j}\right) \subset \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_{j} \tag{6.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathcal{V}_{j}$ is defined in Lemma 4.7 and $\Upsilon$ is the inverse of the coordinate change $\Psi$ given in Lemma 6.2. Then, we will apply the flow $\widehat{\Phi}^{t}$ associated to the vector field (6.3) to points in $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_{j}$. To obtain the inclusion (6.4) we define the function $g_{\mathcal{I}_{j}}\left(p_{2}, q_{2}, \sigma, \delta\right)$ involved in the definition of $\mathcal{V}_{j}$.

Define

$$
\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_{j}=\mathbb{D}_{1}^{1} \times \cdots \times \mathbb{D}_{j}^{j-2} \times \widehat{\mathcal{N}}_{j} \times \mathbb{D}_{j}^{j+2} \times \cdots \times \mathbb{D}_{j}^{N}
$$

where $\widehat{\mathcal{N}}_{j}$ is the set defined in (5.8) and $\mathbb{D}_{j}^{k}$ are defined as

$$
\mathbb{D}_{j}^{k}=\left\{\left|c_{k}\right| \leq M_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm} \delta^{(1-r) / 2}\right\} \quad \text { for } k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{ \pm}, \quad \mathbb{D}_{j}^{j \pm 2}=\left\{\left|c_{j \pm 2}\right| \leq M_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}\right\} .
$$

Define the function $g_{\mathcal{I}_{j}}\left(p_{2}, q_{2}, \sigma, \delta\right)$ involved in the definition of $\mathcal{V}_{j}$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
g_{\mathcal{I}_{j}}\left(p_{2}, q_{2}, \sigma, \delta\right)=p_{2}+a_{p}(\sigma) p_{2}+a_{q}(\sigma) q_{2}-x_{2}^{*}, \tag{6.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $x_{2}^{*}$ is the constant defined in (5.11) and

$$
a_{p}(\sigma)=\partial_{p_{2}} \widetilde{\Upsilon}_{p_{2}}(0, \sigma, 0,0,0), \quad a_{q}(\sigma)=\partial_{q_{2}} \widetilde{\Upsilon}_{p_{2}}(0, \sigma, 0,0,0),
$$

where $\Upsilon=\mathrm{Id}+\widetilde{\Upsilon}$ is the inverse of the change $\Psi$ given in Lemma 6.2.
Lemma 6.3. With the above notation, for $\delta$ small enough condition (6.4) is satisfied.
Proof. This is a straightforward consequence of Lemmas 5.1 and 6.2.
After straightening the invariant manifold, the next lemma studies the saddle map in the transformed variables for points belonging to $\mathcal{V}_{j}$.

Lemma 6.4. Consider the flow $\widehat{\Phi}_{t}$ associated to (6.3) and a point $\left(z^{0}, c^{0}\right) \in \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_{j}$. Then for $\delta$ and $\sigma$ small enough, the point

$$
\left(z^{f}, c^{f}\right)=\widehat{\Phi}_{T_{j}}\left(z^{0}, c^{0}\right)
$$

where $T_{j}=T_{j}\left(x_{2}^{0}\right)$ is the time defined in (5.10), satisfies

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\left|x_{1}^{f}\right| \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}, & \left|y_{1}^{f}\right| \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}, \\
\left|x_{2}^{f}-f_{2}(\sigma)\right| \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{r^{\prime}}, & \left|y_{2}^{f}+\frac{f_{1}(\sigma)}{f_{2}(\sigma)} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta)\right| \leq \frac{f_{1}(\sigma)}{f_{2}(\sigma)} \delta,
\end{array}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|c_{k}^{f}-c_{k}^{0} e^{i T_{j}}\right| & \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{(1-r) / 2+r^{\prime}} \quad \text { for } k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{ \pm}, \\
\left|c_{j \pm 2}^{f}-c_{j \pm 2}^{0} e^{i T_{j}}\right| & \leq 2 M_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm} \sigma\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

We postpone the proof of this lemma to Section 6.1.
Now, to complete the proof of Lemma 4.7 we need two steps.
The first is to undo the change of coordinates performed in Lemma 6.2 to express the estimates of the saddle map in the original variables.

The second step is to adjust the time so that the image belongs to the section $\Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}$. These two final steps are done in the next two lemmas.

Concerning the first step, recall that of variables $\Psi$ defined in Lemma 6.2 does not change the elliptic variables, and therefore it only affects the hyperbolic ones.

Lemma 6.5. Consider the flow $\Phi_{t}$ associated to (4.14) and a point $\left(p^{0}, q^{0}, c^{0}\right) \in \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_{j}$. Then for $\delta$ and $\sigma$ small enough, the point

$$
\left(p^{f}, q^{f}, c^{f}\right)=\Phi_{T_{j}}\left(p^{0}, q^{0}, c^{0}\right)
$$

where $T_{j}$ is the time defined in (5.10), satisfies

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\left|p_{1}^{f}\right| \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}, & \left|q_{1}^{f}\right| \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \\
\left|p_{2}^{f}-\sigma\right| \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{r^{\prime}}, & \left|q_{2}^{f}+\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta)\right| \leq \widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta K_{\sigma}
\end{array}
$$

for a certain constant $\widetilde{C}^{(j)}$ satisfying $C^{(j)} / 2 \leq \widetilde{C}^{(j)} \leq 2 C^{(j)}$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|c_{k}^{f}-c_{k}^{0} e^{i T_{j}}\right| & \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{(1-r) / 2+r^{\prime}} \quad \text { for } m \in \mathcal{P}^{ \pm} \\
\left|c_{j \pm 2}^{f}-c_{j \pm 2}^{0} e^{i T_{j}}\right| & \left.\leq 2 M_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm \sigma\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)}\right.} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof. In Lemma 6.2 we have defined the change $\Psi$ which relates the two sets of coordinates by

$$
\left(p_{1}^{f}, q_{1}^{f}, p_{2}^{f}, q_{2}^{f}, c^{f}\right)=\left(\Psi\left(x_{1}^{f}, y_{1}^{f}, x_{2}^{f}, y_{2}^{f}, c^{f}\right), c^{f}\right)
$$

Taking into account the properties of the change $\Psi$ stated in that lemma, one can easily see that from the estimates obtained in Lemma 6.4, one can deduce the estimates stated in Lemma 6.5. First recall that $\Psi$ does not modify the elliptic modes and therefore we only need to deal with the hyperbolic ones.

Using the properties of $\Psi$ and modifying $K_{\sigma}$ slightly, it is easy to see that for $\delta$ small enough,

$$
\left|p_{1}^{f}\right| \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}, \quad\left|q_{1}^{f}\right| \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}
$$

To obtain the estimates for $p_{2}$ it is enough to recall the definition of $f_{2}(\sigma)$ in (5.9). For the estimates for $q_{2}$, it is enough to see that from the properties of $\Psi$ and the estimates for $z^{f}$ one can deduce that

$$
q_{2}=\partial_{x_{2}} \Psi_{x_{2}}(0,0, \sigma, 0) x_{2}+\mathcal{O}_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)
$$

Therefore, we can define a constant $\widetilde{C}^{j}$ such that the estimate for $q_{2}$ is satisfied.
Once we have obtained good estimates for the approximate time map in the original variables, we adjust it to obtain image points belonging to the section $\Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}$.
Lemma 6.6. Consider a point $\left(p^{f}, q^{f}, c^{f}\right) \in \Phi^{T_{j}}\left(\mathcal{V}_{j}\right)$, where $\Phi^{t}$ is the flow of (4.14), $T_{j}$ is the time defined in (5.10) and $\mathcal{V}_{j}$ is the set considered in Theorem 5. Then there exists a time $T^{\prime}$, which depends on the point $\left(p^{f}, q^{f}, c^{f}\right)$, such that

$$
\left(p^{*}, q^{*}, c^{*}\right)=\Phi^{T^{\prime}}\left(p^{f}, q^{f}, c^{f}\right) \in \Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}
$$

Moreover, there exists a constant $K_{\sigma}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|T^{\prime}\right| \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{r} \tag{6.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|c_{k}^{*}-c_{k}^{f}\right| & \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{1-r} \quad \text { for } k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}, & & \\
\left|p_{1}^{*}-p_{1}^{f}\right| & \leq K_{\sigma}\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \delta^{1-r}, & & p_{2}=\sigma, \\
\left|q_{1}^{*}-q_{1}^{f}\right| & \leq K_{\sigma}\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \delta^{1-r}, & & \left|q_{2}^{*}-q_{2}^{f}\right| \leq K_{\sigma} C^{(j)} \delta^{2-r} \ln (1 / \delta)
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof. The proof follows the same lines as the proof of Proposition 7.3. Namely, first we obtain a priori bounds for each variable, which then allow us to obtain more refined estimates.

To finish the proof of Lemma 4.7, we define $\mathcal{U}_{j}=\mathcal{B}_{\text {loc }}^{j}\left(\mathcal{V}_{j}\right)$ and we check that this set has an $\widetilde{\mathcal{I}}_{j}$-product-like structure for a multi-parameter set $\widetilde{\mathcal{I}}_{j}$ satisfying the properties stated in Lemma 4.7 (see Definition 4.6). Indeed, from the results obtained in Lemmas 6.5 and 6.6 and recalling that by the hypotheses of Lemma 4.7 we have $M_{\text {hyp }}^{(j)} \geq 1$, it is easy to see that one can define a constant $K_{\sigma}$ so that if we consider the constants $\widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm}^{(j)}, \tilde{M}_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm}^{(j)}$ and $\widetilde{M}_{\text {hyp }}^{(j)}$ defined in Lemma 4.7 and the constant $\widetilde{C}^{(j)}$ given in Lemma 6.5, the set $\mathcal{U}_{j}=\mathcal{B}_{\text {loc }}^{j}\left(\mathcal{V}_{j}\right)$ satisfies condition $\mathbf{C 1}$ stated in Definition 4.6.

Thus, it only remains to check that $\mathcal{U}_{j}$ also satisfies condition $\mathbf{C} 2$ of Definition 4.6. First we check the part of $\mathbf{C} \mathbf{2}$ concerning the elliptic modes. Indeed, from the estimates for the nonneighbor and adjacent elliptic modes given in Lemmas 6.5 and 6.6 , one can easily see that for any fixed values for the hyperbolic modes, if one takes the constants $\widetilde{m}_{\text {ell }}^{(j)}, \widetilde{m}_{\text {adj }}^{(j)}$ given in Lemma 4.7, the image of the elliptic modes contains disks as stated in Definition 4.6. Then, it only remains to check that the inclusion condition is also satisfied for the variable $q_{2}$. From the proof of Lemma 6.4 given in Section 6.1, one can easily deduce that the image in the $y_{2}$ variable contains an interval of length $\mathcal{O}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)$ whose points are of size smaller than $2 \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta)$. When we undo the normal form change of coordinates (Lemma 6.5), this interval is only slightly modified but keeping a length of order $\mathcal{O}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)$. Thus taking into account the constant $\widetilde{C}^{(j)}$ given Lemma 6.5 and the results of Lemma 6.6, we can obtain a constant $\tilde{m}_{\text {hyp }}^{(j)}$ so that condition $\mathbf{C} 2$ is satisfied.

Finally, it remains to obtain upper bounds for the time spent by the map $\mathcal{B}_{\text {loc }}^{j}$. To this end it is enough to recall that the time spent is the sum of the time $T_{j}$ defined in (5.10), which has been bounded in (5.12), and the time $T^{\prime}$ given in Lemma 6.6, which has been bounded in (6.6). Thus, taking into accounts these two bounds we obtain the bound for the time spent by $\mathcal{B}_{\text {loc }}^{j}$ given in Lemma 4.7. This finishes the proof of Lemma 4.7.

### 6.1. Proof of Lemma 6.4

As in Section 5, we make a variation of constants to set up a fixed point argument. Namely, we consider

$$
x_{i}=e^{\sqrt{3} t} u_{i}, \quad y_{i}=e^{-\sqrt{3} t} v_{i}, \quad c_{k}=e^{i t} d_{k},
$$

and then we obtain the integral equations

$$
\begin{align*}
& u_{i}=x_{i}^{0}+\int_{0}^{T_{j}} e^{-\sqrt{3} t}\left(R_{\mathrm{hyp}, x_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}\right)+\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, x_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)\right) d t \\
& v_{i}=y_{i}^{0}+\int_{0}^{T_{j}} e^{\sqrt{3} t}\left(R_{\mathrm{hyp}, y_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}\right)+\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, y_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)\right) d t \\
& d_{k}=c_{k}^{0}+\int_{0}^{T_{j}} e^{-i t}\left(\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}\left(d e^{i t}\right)+\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{k}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)\right) d t \tag{6.7}
\end{align*}
$$

Note that the terms $R_{\mathrm{hyp}, z}$ are the ones considered in Section 5, and therefore we will use the properties of these functions obtained in that section. We use the same integration time $T_{j}$ as in (5.10).

As before, we use (6.7) to set up a fixed point argument in two steps. First we define $\mathcal{G}=\left(\mathcal{G}_{\text {hyp }}, \mathcal{G}_{\text {ell }}\right)$ as

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{i}}(u, v, d) \\
&=x_{i}^{0}+\int_{0}^{T_{j}} e^{-\sqrt{3} t}\left(R_{\mathrm{hyp}, x_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}\right)+\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, x_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)\right) d t \\
& \quad=\mathcal{F}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{i}}(u, v)+\int_{0}^{T_{j}} e^{-\sqrt{3} t} \widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, x_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right) d t
\end{aligned}
$$

$\mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{i}}(u, v, d)$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =y_{i}^{0}-\int_{0}^{T_{j}} e^{\sqrt{3} t}\left(R_{\mathrm{hyp}, y_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}\right)+\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, x_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)\right) d t \\
& =\mathcal{F}_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{i}}(u, v)+\int_{0}^{T_{j}} e^{\sqrt{3} t} \widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, x_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right) d t
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }}$ is the operator defined in (5.15), and

$$
\mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}(u, v, d)=c_{k}^{0}+\int_{0}^{T_{j}} e^{-i t}\left(\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}\left(d e^{i t}\right)+\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{k}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)\right) d t
$$

We modify this operator slightly as we have done for $\mathcal{F}_{\text {hyp }}$ in Section 5 to make it contractive. We define

$$
\begin{aligned}
\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}(u, v, d) & =\mathcal{G}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}\left(u_{1}, \mathcal{G}_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}(u, v, d), \mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{2}}(u, v, d), v_{2}, d\right), \\
\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}}(u, v, d) & =\mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{2}}\left(u_{1}, \mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{1}}(u, v, d), \mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{2}}(u, v, d), v_{2}, d\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

We denote the new operator by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}=\left(\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{1}}, \mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{2}}, \mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{1}}, \widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{2}}, \mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{ell}}\right) \tag{6.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

its fixed points coincide with those of $\mathcal{G}$.
We extend the norm defined in (5.17) to incorporate the elliptic modes. To this end, we define

$$
\|h\|_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm}=\left(M_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm} \delta^{(1-r) / 2}\right)^{-1}\|h\|_{\infty}, \quad\|h\|_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm}=M_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm}^{-1}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{-1 / 2}\|h\|_{\infty}
$$

and

$$
\|(u, v, d)\|_{*}=\sup _{\substack{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{ \pm} \\ i=1,2}}\left\{\left\|u_{i}\right\|_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{i}},\left\|v_{i}\right\|_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{i}},\left\|d_{k}\right\|_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm},\left\|d_{j \pm 2}\right\|_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm}\right\}
$$

which, abusing notation, is denoted as the norm in (5.18). We also define the Banach space

$$
\mathcal{Y}=\left\{(u, v, d):[0, T] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^{N-3} \times \mathbb{R}^{4}:\|(u, v, d)\|_{*}<\infty\right\}
$$

Proceeding as in Section 5, we state the following two propositions, from which one can easily deduce the contractivity of $\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}$. The proof of the first one is straightforward, taking into account the definition of $\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}$ and Lemma 5.4, and the proof of the second is deferred to the end of the section.

Proposition 6.7. Consider the operator $\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}$ defined in (6.8). Then the components of $\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}(0)$ are given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{1}}(0) & =\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{i}}(0), & & \widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{2}}(0)=x_{2}^{0} \\
\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}(0) & =y_{1}^{0}, & & \widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}}(0)=\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}}(0), \\
\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {ell }, c_{k}}(0) & =c_{k}^{0} . & &
\end{aligned}
$$

There exists a constant $\kappa_{1}>0$ independent of $\sigma, \delta$ and $j$ such that

$$
\|\tilde{\mathcal{G}}(0)\|_{*} \leq \kappa_{1} .
$$

Proposition 6.8. Consider $w_{1}, w_{2} \in B\left(2 \kappa_{1}\right) \subset \mathcal{Y}$, a constant $r^{\prime}$ satisfying $0<r^{\prime}<$ $1 / 2-2 r$ and $\delta$ as defined in Theorem 3. Then taking $\sigma$ small enough and $N$ large enough such that $0<\delta=e^{-\gamma N} \ll 1$, there exist a constant $K_{\sigma}>0$ which is independent of $j$ and $N$, but might depend on $\sigma$, and a constant $K$ independent of $j, N$ and $\sigma$, such that the operator $\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}$ satisfies

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{i}}(u, v, d)-\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {hyp }, u_{i}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{i}, v_{i}} & \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{r^{\prime}}\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*}, \\
\left\|\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{i}}(u, v, d)-\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{i}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{i}, v_{i}} & \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{\prime^{\prime}}\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*}, \\
\left\|\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {ell }, c_{k}}(u, v, d)-\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {ell }, c_{k}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{\mathrm{elll}, \pm} & \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{r^{\prime}}\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*} \\
\left\|\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {adj }, \pm}(u, v, d)-\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {adj }, \pm}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm} & \leq K \sigma\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, since $0<\delta \ll \sigma$,

$$
\left\|\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}\left(w_{2}\right)-\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}\left(w_{1}\right)\right\|_{*} \leq 2 K \sigma\left\|w_{2}-w_{1}\right\|_{*} .
$$

and therefore, for $\sigma$ small enough, $\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}$ is contractive.
The previous two propositions show that the operator $\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}$ is contractive. Let us denote by ( $u^{*}, v^{*}, d^{*}$ ) its unique fixed point in the ball $B\left(2 \kappa_{1}\right) \subset \mathcal{Y}$. Now, it only remains to obtain the estimates stated in Lemma 6.4. The estimates for the hyperbolic variables are obtained
as in the proof of Lemma 5.2. For the elliptic ones it is enough to take into account that

$$
\begin{aligned}
c_{k}^{f} & =c_{k}\left(T_{j}\right)=d_{k}\left(T_{j}\right) e^{i T_{j}} \\
& =\mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}(0)\left(T_{j}\right) e^{i T_{j}}+\left(\mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}\left(u^{*}, v^{*}, d^{*}\right)\left(T_{j}\right)-\mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}(0)\left(T_{j}\right)\right) e^{i T_{j}} \\
& =c_{k}^{0} e^{i T_{j}}+\left(\mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}\left(u^{*}, v^{*}, d^{*}\right)\left(T_{j}\right)-\mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}(0)\left(T_{j}\right)\right) e^{i T_{j}}
\end{aligned}
$$

and bound the second term using the Lipschitz constant obtained in Proposition 6.8.
We finish the section by proving Proposition 6.8, which completes the proof of Lemma 6.4.
Proof of Proposition 6.8. As in the proof of Proposition 5.5, first we establish bounds for any $(u, v, d) \in B\left(2 \kappa_{1}\right) \subset \mathcal{Y}$ in the supremum norm, which will be used to bound the Lipschitz constant of each component of $\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}$. Indeed, if $(u, v, d) \in B\left(2 \kappa_{1}\right) \subset \mathcal{Y}$, then (5.19) holds and

$$
\left|d_{k}\right| \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{(1-r) / 2} \quad \text { for } k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{ \pm}, \quad\left|d_{j \pm 2}\right| \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{(1-r) / 2}
$$

We bound the Lipschitz constant for each component of $\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {ell }}$. We split each component into the elliptic, hyperbolic and mixed part. We deal first with the elliptic part. It can be seen that for $k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{ \pm}$,

$$
\left|\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}\left(d^{\prime} e^{i t}\right)-\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}\left(d e^{i t}\right)\right| \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{1-r} N\left(d_{k}-d_{k}^{\prime}\right)+K_{\sigma} \delta \sum_{\ell \in \mathcal{P}_{j} \backslash\{k\}}\left(d_{\ell}-d_{\ell}^{\prime}\right)
$$

Therefore,

$$
\left\|\int_{0}^{T_{j}} e^{-i t}\left(\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}\left(d e^{i t}\right)-\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}\left(d^{\prime} e^{i t}\right)\right) d t\right\|_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm} \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{1-r} N T_{j}\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*}
$$

Proceeding analogously, one can see that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|\int_{0}^{T_{j}} e^{-i t}\left(\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{j \pm 2}}\left(d e^{i t}\right)-\mathcal{Z}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{j \pm 2}}\left(d^{\prime} e^{i t}\right)\right) d t\right\|_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm} \\
& \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{1-r} N T_{j}\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*}
\end{aligned}
$$

Now we bound the mixed terms. Proceeding analogously and considering the properties of $\widetilde{R}_{\text {mix }, c_{k}}$ stated in Lemma 6.2, we can see that for $k \neq j \pm 2$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{k}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)-\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{k}}\left(u^{\prime} e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v^{\prime} e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d^{\prime} e^{i t}\right)\right\|_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm} \\
& \leq K_{\sigma} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta) \sum_{i=1,2}\left(\left\|u_{i}-u_{i}^{\prime}\right\|_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{i}}+\left\|v_{i}-v_{i}^{\prime}\right\|_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{i}}\right) \\
& \quad+K_{\sigma} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta)\left(\left\|d_{k}-d_{k}^{\prime}\right\|_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm}+K_{\sigma} \delta^{(1-r) / 2} \sum_{\ell \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{ \pm}}\left\|d_{\ell}-d_{\ell}^{\prime}\right\|_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm}\right) \\
& \quad+K_{\sigma} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta^{1+(1-r) / 2} \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta)\left(\left\|d_{j-2}-d_{j-2}^{\prime}\right\|_{\mathrm{adj},-}+\left\|d_{j+2}-d_{j+2}^{\prime}\right\|_{\mathrm{adj},+}\right) \\
& \leq \\
& K_{\sigma} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta)\left(1+K_{\sigma} N \delta^{(1-r) / 2}\right)\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, using $\delta=e^{-\gamma N}$ and (5.12),

$$
\begin{aligned}
\| \int_{0}^{T_{j}} e^{-i t}\left(\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{k}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)\right. & \left.-\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{k}}\left(u^{\prime} e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v^{\prime} e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d^{\prime} e^{i t}\right)\right) d t \|_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm} \\
& \leq K_{\sigma} \widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln ^{3}(1 / \delta)\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*}
\end{aligned}
$$

So, we conclude that for $k \in \mathcal{P}^{ \pm}$,

$$
\left\|\mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}(u, v, d)-\mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{k}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm} \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{1-r} \ln ^{3}(1 / \delta)\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*}
$$

Proceeding analogously we can bound the Lipschitz constant for $\mathcal{G}_{\text {ell }, c_{j \pm 2}}$. We bound it for $k=j-2$; the other case can be done analogously. Below, $K$ denotes a generic constant independent of $\sigma$. Note that now there is an additional term in $\widetilde{R}_{\text {mix }, c_{j-2}}$. This implies that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{j-2}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)-\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{j-2}}\left(u^{\prime} e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v^{\prime} e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d^{\prime} e^{i t}\right)\right| \\
& \leq \\
& \leq K \sigma M_{\mathrm{adj},-}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} e^{-\sqrt{3} t} \sum_{i=1,2}\left(\left\|u_{i}-u_{i}^{\prime}\right\|_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{i}}+\left\|v_{i}-v_{i}^{\prime}\right\|_{\mathrm{hyp}, v_{i}}\right) \\
& \quad+K \sigma M_{\mathrm{adj},-( }\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} e^{-\sqrt{3} t}\left\|d_{j-2}-d_{j-2}^{\prime}\right\|_{\mathrm{adj},-} \\
& \quad+K_{\sigma} M_{\mathrm{adj},-}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \delta^{(1-r) / 2} e^{-\sqrt{3} t}\left(\left\|d_{j+2}-d_{j+2}^{\prime}\right\|_{\mathrm{adj},+}+\sum_{\ell \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{ \pm}}\left\|d_{\ell}-d_{\ell}^{\prime}\right\|_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm}\right) \\
& \leq \\
& \leq K \sigma M_{\mathrm{adj},-}\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} e^{-\sqrt{3} t}\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, integrating and applying norms, we obtain

$$
\begin{array}{r}
\left\|\int_{0}^{T_{j}} e^{-i t}\left(\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{j-2}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)-\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, c_{j-2}}\left(u^{\prime} e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v^{\prime} e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d^{\prime} e^{i t}\right)\right) d t\right\|_{\mathrm{adj},-} \\
\leq K \sigma\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*},
\end{array}
$$

which leads to

$$
\left\|\mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{j-2}}(u, v, d)-\mathcal{G}_{\mathrm{ell}, c_{j-2}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{\mathrm{adj},-} \leq K \sigma\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*}
$$

Now we bound the Lipschitz constant for the hyperbolic components of the operator. Note that we only need to bound the terms involving $\widetilde{R}_{\text {mix }, z}$ since the other terms of the operator have been bounded in Proposition 5.5. We start with the Lipschitz constants of $\mathcal{G}_{\text {hyp }, v_{i}}$. To this end we bound

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|\int_{0}^{T_{j}} e^{\sqrt{3} t}\left(\widetilde{R}_{\text {mix }, y_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)-\widetilde{R}_{\text {mix }, y_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)\right) d t\right| \\
& \quad \leq \int_{0}^{T_{j}}\left(\mathcal{O}\left(\sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|d_{k}\right|^{2}\left(v_{1}+v_{2}\right)\right) e^{\sqrt{3} t}\left|u_{i}-u_{i}^{\prime}\right|+\mathcal{O}\left(\sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}}\left|d_{k}\right|^{2}\right) \sum\left|v_{i}-v_{i}^{\prime}\right|\right) d t \\
& \quad+\int_{0}^{T_{j}} \sum_{k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}} \mathcal{O}\left(d_{k}\left(v_{1}+v_{2}\right)\right)\left|d_{k}-d_{k}^{\prime}\right| d t
\end{aligned}
$$

where we abuse notation concerning the $\mathcal{O}(\cdot)$ as before. Thus, integrating the exponentials and applying norms, one can easily see that

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\left|\int_{0}^{T_{j}} e^{\sqrt{3} t}\left(\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, y_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)-\widetilde{R}_{\mathrm{mix}, y_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)\right) d t\right| \\
& \leq K_{\sigma} N \delta^{1-r} \ln (1 / \delta)\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*}
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, applying norms and using the condition on $\delta$ from Theorem 3, we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\| \int_{0}^{T_{j}} e^{\sqrt{3} t}\left(\widetilde{R}_{\text {mix }, y_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)-\right. & \left.\widetilde{R}_{\text {mix }, y_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)\right) d t \|_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}} \\
& \leq K_{\sigma} \delta^{1-r} \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta)\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime} v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*}, \\
\| \int_{0}^{T_{j}} e^{\sqrt{3} t}\left(\widetilde{R}_{\text {mix }, y_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)-\right. & \left.\widetilde{R}_{\text {mix }, y_{i}}\left(u e^{\sqrt{3} t}, v e^{-\sqrt{3} t}, d e^{i t}\right)\right) d t \|_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}} \\
\leq & K_{\sigma} \delta^{1 / 2-2 r} \ln (1 / \delta)\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime} v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Then, taking into account the results of Lemma 5.5, one can conclude that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}(u, v, d)-\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{\text {hyp }, v_{1}} \\
& \quad \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln (1 / \delta)+\delta^{1-r} \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta)\right)\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*}, \\
& \left\|\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}}(u, v, d)-\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{\text {hyp }, v_{2}} \\
& \quad \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln (1 / \delta)+\delta^{1 / 2-2 r} \ln (1 / \delta)\right)\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*}
\end{aligned}
$$

Proceeding in the same way, one can obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{1}}(u, v, d)-\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{1}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{1}} \\
& \quad \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln (1 / \delta)+\delta^{1-r} \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta)\right)\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*} \\
& \left\|\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{2}}(u, v, d)-\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{2}}\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{\mathrm{hyp}, u_{2}} \\
& \quad \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\left(\widehat{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \ln (1 / \delta)+\delta^{1 / 2-2 r} \ln ^{2}(1 / \delta)\right)\left\|(u, v, d)-\left(u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}, d^{\prime}\right)\right\|_{*}
\end{aligned}
$$

This completes the proof.

## 7. The global map: proof of Lemma 4.8

We devote this section to proving Lemma 4.8. The continuous dependence with respect to initial conditions of ordinary differential equations gives for free that the map $\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}$, defined in (4.36), is well defined for points close enough to the heteroclinic connection defined in (4.3). Nevertheless, to prove Lemma 4.8, we need more accurate estimates.

Recall that the map $\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}$ is defined in $\Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}$, which is contained in $\mathcal{M}(b)=1$ (see (4.1)). So, just as for $\mathcal{B}_{\mathrm{loc}}^{j}$, we use the system of coordinates defined in Section 4.1. Recall that the initial section $\Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}$, defined in (4.34), and the final section $\Sigma_{j+1}^{\mathrm{in}}$, defined in (4.26),
are expressed in the variables adapted to the $j$ th and $(j+1)$ st saddles respectively, namely, in the coordinates $\left(p_{1}^{(j)}, q_{1}^{(j)}, p_{2}^{(j)}, q_{2}^{(j)}, c^{(j)}\right)$ and $\left(p_{1}^{(j+1)}, q_{1}^{(j+1)}, p_{2}^{(j+1)}, q_{2}^{(j+1)}, c^{(j+1)}\right)$ (see Section 7). To simplify the exposition, first we will study the map $\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}$ expressing both the domain and the image in the variables $\left(p_{1}^{(j)}, q_{1}^{(j)}, p_{2}^{(j)}, q_{2}^{(j)}, c^{(j)}\right)$. Then we will express the image of $\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}$ in the new variables. To simplify notation we denote the variables adapted to the $j$ th and $(j+1)$ st saddles by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(p_{1}, q_{1}, p_{2}, q_{2}, c\right)=\left(p_{1}^{(j)}, q_{1}^{(j)}, p_{2}^{(j)}, q_{2}^{(j)}, c^{(j)}\right) \\
& \left(\widetilde{p}_{1}, \widetilde{q}_{1}, \widetilde{p}_{2}, \widetilde{q}_{2}, \widetilde{c}\right)=\left(p_{1}^{(j+1)}, q_{1}^{(j+1)}, p_{2}^{(j+1)}, q_{2}^{(j+1)}, c^{(j+1)}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and we denote by $\Theta^{j}$ the change of coordinates that relates them, namely

$$
\left(\widetilde{p}_{1}, \widetilde{q}_{1}, \widetilde{p}_{2}, \tilde{q}_{2}, \widetilde{c}\right)=\Theta^{j}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, p_{2}, q_{2}, c\right)
$$

Lemma 7.1. The change of coordinates $\Theta^{j}$ is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Theta_{\widetilde{c}_{k}}^{j}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, p_{2}, q_{2}, c\right) & =\frac{\omega p_{2}+\omega^{2} q_{2}}{\widetilde{r} \sqrt{\operatorname{Im} \omega}} c_{k} \quad \text { for } k \in \mathcal{P}_{j+1}^{ \pm} \cup\{j+3\}, \\
\Theta_{\widetilde{c}_{j-1}}^{j}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, p_{2}, q_{2}, c\right) & =\frac{\omega p_{2}+\omega^{2} q_{2}}{\widetilde{r} \operatorname{Im} \omega}\left(\omega^{2} p_{1}+\omega q_{1}\right), \\
\Theta_{\widetilde{p}_{1}}^{j}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, p_{2}, q_{2}, c\right) & =\frac{r}{\widetilde{r}} q_{2}, \quad \Theta_{\widetilde{p}_{2}}^{j}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, p_{2}, q_{2}, c\right)=\operatorname{Re} z+\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \operatorname{Im} z, \\
\Theta_{\widetilde{q}_{1}}^{j}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, p_{2}, q_{2}, c\right) & =\frac{r}{\widetilde{r}} p_{2}, \quad \Theta_{\widetilde{q}_{2}}^{j}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, p_{2}, q_{2}, c\right)=\operatorname{Re} z-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \operatorname{Im} z,
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\omega=e^{2 \pi i / 3}$ and

$$
\begin{align*}
& r^{2}=1-\sum_{k \neq j-1, j, j+1}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2}-\frac{p_{1}^{2}+q_{1}^{2}-p_{1} q_{1}}{\operatorname{Im} \omega}-\frac{p_{2}^{2}+q_{2}^{2}-p_{2} q_{2}}{\operatorname{Im} \omega},  \tag{7.1}\\
& \widetilde{r}^{2}=\frac{p_{2}^{2}+q_{2}^{2}-p_{2} q_{2}}{\operatorname{Im} \omega}, \quad z=\frac{c_{j+2}}{\widetilde{r}}\left(\omega p_{2}+\omega^{2} q_{2}\right) .
\end{align*}
$$

Proof. We consider a point ( $p, q, c$ ) and we express it in the new variables. We have to undo the changes (4.8) and (4.5) referring to saddle $j$ and then apply them again but referring to saddle $j+1$. The point ( $p, q, c$ ) has associated variables $r$ (as defined in (7.1)) and $\theta$. We do not need to know the value of $\theta$ to deduce the form of the change $\Theta^{j}$. Indeed, note that if we consider the changes (4.5) and (4.8) for the mode $b_{j+1}$, we have

$$
\widetilde{r} e^{i \widetilde{\theta}}=b_{j+1}=c_{j+1} e^{i \theta}=\frac{\omega^{2} p_{2}+\omega q_{2}}{\sqrt{\operatorname{Im} \omega}} e^{i \theta},
$$

which implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
e^{i(\theta-\tilde{\theta})}=\frac{\omega p_{2}+\omega^{2} q_{2}}{\widetilde{r} \sqrt{\operatorname{Im} \omega}} \tag{7.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using this formula and recalling that $\widetilde{c}_{k} e^{i \widetilde{\theta}}=b_{k}=c_{k} e^{i \theta}$, it is straightforward to deduce the form of $\Theta_{\widetilde{\widetilde{c}}_{k}}^{j}$ for $k \in \mathcal{P}_{j+1}^{ \pm} \cup\{j+3\}$. To deduce the form of $\Theta_{\widetilde{p}_{1}}^{j}$ and $\Theta_{\widetilde{q}_{1}}^{j}$ it is enough to consider the changes (4.5) and (4.8) for the mode $b_{j}$ to obtain

$$
r e^{i \theta}=b_{j}=\widetilde{c}_{j} e^{i \tilde{\theta}}=\frac{\omega^{2} \widetilde{p}_{1}+\omega \tilde{q}_{1}}{\sqrt{\operatorname{Im} \omega}} e^{i \tilde{\theta}}
$$

Then, it is enough to use formula (7.2) to obtain $\Theta_{\widetilde{p}_{1}}^{j}$ and $\Theta_{\widetilde{q}_{1}}^{j}$. The other components can be obtained in the same way.
The next step of the proof of Lemma 4.8 is to express the section $\Sigma_{j+1}^{\mathrm{in}}$ in the variables ( $p_{1}, q_{1}, p_{2}, q_{2}, c$ ) using the change $\Theta^{j}$ obtained in Lemma 7.1. This is done in the next corollary, which is a straightforward consequence of Lemma 7.1.

Corollary 7.2. Fix $\sigma>0$ and define

$$
\widetilde{\Sigma}_{j+1}^{\mathrm{in}}=\left(\Theta^{j}\right)^{-1}\left(\Sigma_{j+1}^{\mathrm{in}} \cap \mathcal{W}_{j+1}\right)
$$

where $\Sigma_{j+1}^{\mathrm{in}}$ is the section defined in (4.26) and

$$
\mathcal{W}_{j+1}=\left\{\left|p_{1}\right|,\left|q_{1}\right|,\left|q_{2}\right|,\left|c_{k}\right| \leq \eta \text { for } k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{ \pm} \text {and } k=j \pm 2\right\} .
$$

Then, for $\eta>0$ small enough, $\mathcal{W}_{j+1}$ can be expressed as a graph

$$
p_{2}=w\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, q_{2}, c\right)
$$

Moreover, there exist constants $\kappa^{\prime}, \kappa^{\prime \prime}$ independent of $\eta$ satisfying

$$
0<\kappa^{\prime}<\sqrt{1-\sigma^{2}}<\kappa^{\prime \prime}<1
$$

such that, for any $\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, q_{2}, c\right) \in \mathcal{W}_{j+1}$, the function $w$ satisfies

$$
\kappa^{\prime}<w\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, q_{2}, c\right)<\kappa^{\prime \prime}
$$

Once we have defined the section $\widetilde{\Sigma}_{j+1}^{\mathrm{in}}$, we can define the map

$$
\widetilde{\mathcal{B}}_{\text {glob }}^{j}: \Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }} \supset \mathcal{U}_{j} \rightarrow \widetilde{\Sigma}_{j+1}^{\text {in }}, \quad\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, q_{2}, c\right) \mapsto \widetilde{\mathcal{B}}_{\text {glob }}^{j}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, q_{2}, c\right)
$$

as

$$
\widetilde{\mathcal{B}}_{\text {glob }}^{j}=\Theta_{j}^{-1} \circ \mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}
$$

We want upper bounds independent of $\delta$ and $j$ for the transition time of the corresponding orbits for this map. In the variables ( $p_{1}, q_{1}, p_{2}, q_{2}, c$ ) the heteroclinic connection (4.3) is simply given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(p_{1}^{h}(t), q_{1}^{h}(t), p_{2}^{h}(t), q_{2}^{h}(t), c^{h}(t)\right)=\left(0,0, \sqrt{\frac{\operatorname{Im} \omega}{1+e^{-2 \sqrt{3}\left(t-t_{0}\right)}}}, 0,0\right) \tag{7.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

(see $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$ ). Taking $t_{0}$ such that

$$
\sqrt{\frac{\operatorname{Im} \omega}{1+e^{2 \sqrt{3} t_{0}}}}
$$

one can easily see that $p_{2}^{h}\left(2 t_{0}\right)=\sqrt{1-\sigma^{2}}$ and $2 t_{0} \sim \ln (1 / \sigma)$. In the new coordinates this point is $\left(\widetilde{p}_{1}, \widetilde{q}_{1}, \widetilde{p}_{2}, \widetilde{q}_{2}, \widetilde{c}\right)=(0, \sigma, 0,0,0)$ and thus belongs to the section $\widetilde{q}_{1}=\sigma$. Then, thanks to Corollary 7.2, one can easily deduce that the time $T_{\widetilde{\mathcal{B}}_{\text {glob }}^{j}}=T_{\widetilde{\mathcal{B}}_{\text {glob }}^{j}}\left(q_{1}, p_{1}, p_{2}, c\right)$ spent by the map $\widetilde{\mathcal{B}}_{\text {glob }}^{j}$ for any point $\left(q_{1}, p_{1}, p_{2}, c\right) \in \mathcal{U}_{j} \subset \Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}$ is also independent of $\delta$ and $j$. Recall that the difference between $\widetilde{\mathcal{B}}_{\text {glob }}^{j}$ and $\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}$ is just a change of coordinates and therefore the time $T_{\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}}$ spent by $\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}$ is the same as $T_{\widetilde{\mathcal{B}}_{\text {glob }}^{j}}$. Thus, from now on we will only refer to $T_{\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}}$.

The next step is to study the behavior of the map $\widetilde{\mathcal{B}}_{\text {glob }}^{j}$. In particular, we want to know the properties of the image set $\widetilde{\mathcal{B}}_{\text {glob }}^{j}\left(\mathcal{U}_{j}\right)$.
Proposition 7.3. Consider a parameter set $\widetilde{\mathcal{I}}_{j}$ (as defined in Definition 4.6) and an $\widetilde{\mathcal{I}}_{j}$ -product-like set $\mathcal{U}_{j}$. There exists a constant $\widetilde{K}_{\sigma}$ independent of $j, N$ and $\delta$ and a constant $D^{(j)}$ satisfying

$$
\widetilde{C}^{(j)} / \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \leq D^{(j)} \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{C}^{(j)}
$$

such that the set $\widetilde{\mathcal{B}}_{\text {glob }}^{j}\left(\mathcal{U}_{j}\right) \subset \widetilde{\Sigma}_{j}^{\text {in }}$ satisfies the following conditions:
C1

$$
\widetilde{\mathcal{B}}_{\text {glob }}^{j}\left(\mathcal{U}_{j}\right) \subset \widehat{\mathbb{D}}_{j}^{1} \times \cdots \times \widehat{\mathbb{D}}_{j}^{j-2} \times \mathcal{S}_{j} \times \widehat{\mathbb{D}}_{j}^{j+2} \times \cdots \times \widehat{\mathbb{D}}_{j}^{N}
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \widehat{\mathbb{D}}_{j}^{k}=\left\{\left|c_{k}\right| \leq\left(\widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm}^{(j)}+\widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \delta^{r^{\prime}}\right) \delta^{(1-r) / 2}\right\} \quad \text { for } k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{ \pm}, \\
& \widehat{\mathbb{D}}_{j}^{j \pm 2} \subset\left\{\left|c_{j \pm 2}\right| \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm}^{(j)}\left(\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}\right\},
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathcal{S}_{j}=\left\{\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, p_{2}, q_{2}\right) \in \mathbb{R}^{4}:\left|p_{1}\right|,\left|q_{1}\right| \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}\left(\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2},\right. \\
& \left.p_{2}=\sigma,-D^{(j)} \delta\left(\ln (1 / \delta)-\widetilde{K}_{\sigma}\right) \leq q_{2}^{(j)} \leq-D^{(j)} \delta\left(\ln (1 / \delta)+\widetilde{K}_{\sigma}\right)\right\},
\end{aligned}
$$

Define the projection $\tilde{\pi}(p, q, c)=\left(p_{2}, q_{2}, c_{j-2}, \ldots, c_{N}\right)$. Then
$\mathbf{C 2}\left[-D^{(j)} \delta\left(\ln (1 / \delta)-1 / \widetilde{K}_{\sigma}\right),-D^{(j)} \delta\left(\ln (1 / \delta)+1 / \widetilde{K}_{\sigma}\right)\right] \times\{\sigma\} \times \mathbb{D}_{j,-}^{j+2} \times \cdots \times \mathbb{D}_{j,-}^{N}$

$$
\subset \tilde{\pi}\left(\widetilde{\mathcal{B}}_{\text {glob }}^{j}\left(\mathcal{U}_{j}\right)\right)
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{D}_{j,-}^{k} & =\left\{\left|c_{k}^{(j)}\right| \leq\left(\widetilde{m}_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j)}-\widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \delta^{r^{\prime}}\right) \delta^{(1-r) / 2}\right\} \quad \text { for } k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{+}, \\
\mathbb{D}_{j,-}^{j+2} & =\left\{\left|c_{j+2}^{(j)}\right| \leq \widetilde{m}_{\mathrm{adj}}^{(j)}\left(C^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} / \widetilde{K}_{\sigma}\right\} .
\end{aligned}
$$

The proof of this proposition is postponed to Section 7.1.

Once we know the properties of the set $\widetilde{\mathcal{B}}_{\text {glob }}^{j}\left(\mathcal{U}_{j}\right)$, there only remain two final steps. First, to deduce analogous properties for the set $\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}\left(\mathcal{U}_{j}\right) \subset \Sigma_{j+1}^{\mathrm{in}}$. Second, to obtain a parameter set $\mathcal{I}_{j+1}$ and an $\mathcal{I}_{j+1}$-product-like set $\mathcal{V}_{j} \subset \Sigma_{j+1}^{\mathrm{in}}$ which satisfies condition (4.40). These two steps are summarized in the next lemma. Lemma 4.8 follows easily from it.

Lemma 7.4. Consider a parameter set $\mathcal{I}_{j+1}$ whose constants satisfy

$$
D^{(j)} / 2 \leq C^{(j+1)} \leq 2 D^{(j)}, \quad 0<m_{\text {hyp }}^{(j+1)} \leq \tilde{m}_{\text {hyp }}^{(j)}
$$

and

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
M_{\mathrm{ell},-}^{(j+1)}=\max \left\{\widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{ell},-}^{(j)}+\widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \delta^{r^{\prime}}, \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{adj},-}^{(j)}\right\}, & M_{\mathrm{adj},+}^{(j+1)}=\widetilde{m}_{\mathrm{ell},+}^{(j)}+\widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \delta^{r^{\prime}}, \\
M_{\mathrm{ell},+}^{(j+1)}=\widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{ell},+}^{(j)}+\widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \delta^{r^{\prime}}, & M_{\mathrm{adj},-}^{(j+1)}=\widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}, \\
m_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j+1)}=\widetilde{m}_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j)}-\widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \delta^{r^{\prime}}, & m_{\mathrm{adj}}^{(j+1)}=\widetilde{m}_{\mathrm{ell}}^{(j)}+\widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \delta^{r^{\prime}}, \\
M_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j+1)}=\max \left\{\widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{adj},+}^{(j)}, \widetilde{K}_{\sigma}\right\} . &
\end{array}
$$

Then the set

$$
\mathcal{V}_{j+1}=\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}\left(\mathcal{U}_{j}\right) \cap\left\{g_{\mathcal{I}_{j+1}}\left(p_{2}, q_{2}, \sigma, \delta\right)=0\right\} \cap\left\{\left|c_{j+3}^{(j+1)}\right| \leq M_{\mathrm{adj},+}^{(j+1)}\left(C^{(j+1)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}\right\}
$$

where $g_{\mathcal{I}_{j+1}}$ is the function defined in (6.5), is an $\mathcal{I}_{j+1}$-product-like set and satisfies condition (4.40).
Proof. It is enough to apply the change of coordinates $\Theta^{j}$ given in Lemma 7.1.

### 7.1. Proof of Proposition 7.3

We split the proof of Proposition 7.3 into several lemmas, which will give the needed estimates for the different modes. First, let us obtain rough bounds for all the variables, which will be used in the proofs of the forthcoming lemmas. Indeed, since we are restricted to $\mathcal{M}(b)=1$ (see (4.1)) we know that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|c_{k}\right|<1 \tag{7.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Analogously, using the change (4.8), one can see that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|p_{i}\right|,\left|q_{i}\right|<2 \quad \text { for } i=1,2 \tag{7.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now, we start by obtaining more accurate upper bounds for each mode.
Lemma 7.5. Consider the flow $\Phi^{t}$ associated to the vector field in (4.14) and a point $\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, q_{2}, \sigma, c\right) \in \mathcal{U}_{j} \subset \Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}$. Then there exists a constant $\widetilde{K}_{\sigma}>0$ such that for all $t \in\left[0, T_{\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}}\right], \Phi^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)$ satisfies

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\Phi_{c_{k}}^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)\right| & \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm}^{(j)} \delta^{(1-r) / 2} \quad \text { for } k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{ \pm} \\
\left|\Phi_{c_{j \pm 2}^{t}}^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)\right| & \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{adj}, \pm}^{(j)}\left(\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\Phi_{p_{1}}^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)\right| & \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}\left(\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}, \\
\left|\Phi_{q_{1}}^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)\right| & \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}\left(\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}, \\
\left|\Phi_{p_{2}}^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)-p_{2}^{h}(t)\right| & \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \delta^{r^{\prime}} \\
\left|\Phi_{q_{2}}^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)\right| & \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta) .
\end{aligned}
$$

We defer the proof of this lemma to the end of the section.
The bounds obtained in Lemma 7.5 are not enough to prove Proposition 7.3 since we need more accurate estimates for the elliptic modes, the future adjacent modes and $q_{2}$. We obtain them in the following three lemmas.

Lemma 7.6. Consider the flow $\Phi^{t}$ associated to the vector field in (4.14) and a point $\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right) \in \Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}$. Then there exists a constant $\widetilde{K}_{\sigma}>0$ such that for $t \in\left[0, T_{\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}}\right]$ and $k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{ \pm}$,

$$
\left|\Phi_{c_{k}}^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)-c_{k} e^{i T_{\mathcal{B}_{\mathrm{glob}}^{j}}}\right| \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \delta^{(1-r) / 2+r^{\prime}}
$$

Proof. It is enough to point out that, using the bounds obtained in Lemma 7.5, the equation for $c_{k}$ in (4.14) can be written as

$$
\dot{c}_{k}=i c_{k}+\gamma_{k}(t),
$$

where $\|\gamma\|_{\infty} \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \delta^{1-r+r^{\prime}}$. To finish the proof it is enough to apply the variation of constants formula and take into account that the time $T_{\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}}$ has an upper bound independent of $\delta$.

Lemma 7.7. Fix values $p_{1}, q_{1}, q_{2}, c_{j-2}$ and $c_{k}$ for $k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{ \pm}$such that the set

$$
\mathcal{D}=\left\{c_{1}, \ldots, c_{j-2}, p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}\right\} \times \widetilde{\mathbb{D}}_{j,-}^{j+2} \times\left\{c_{j+3}, \ldots, c_{j_{N}}\right\},
$$

where

$$
\left.\left.\widetilde{\mathbb{D}}_{j,-}^{j+2}=\left\{\left|c_{j+2}\right| \leq \widetilde{m}_{\mathrm{adj}}^{(j)}\right) \widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}\right\}
$$

satisfies $\mathcal{D} \subset \mathcal{U}_{j}$. Consider the flow $\Phi^{t}$ associated to the vector field in (4.14) and define the following map for points in $\mathcal{D}$ :

$$
F_{\mathrm{adj}}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)=\Phi_{c_{j+2}}^{T_{\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}}^{j}}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)
$$

Then there exists $\widetilde{K}_{\sigma}>0$ such that

$$
\left\{\left|c_{j+2}\right| \leq \widetilde{m}_{\mathrm{adj}}^{(j)}\left(\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} / \widetilde{K}_{\sigma}\right\} \subset F_{\mathrm{adj}}(\mathcal{D})
$$

Proof. Taking into account the estimates obtained in Lemma 7.5, the equation for $c_{j+2}$ in (4.14) can be written as

$$
\frac{d}{d t}\binom{c_{j+2}}{\bar{c}_{j+2}}=\binom{i c_{j+2}-\frac{2 i \omega}{\operatorname{Im} \omega}\left(p_{2}^{h}(t)\right)^{2} \bar{c}_{j+2}+\gamma_{j+2}(t)}{-i \bar{c}_{j+2}+\frac{2 i \omega^{2}}{\operatorname{Im} \omega}\left(p_{2}^{h}(t)\right)^{2} c_{j+2}+\bar{\gamma}_{j+2}(t)}
$$

where $p_{2}^{h}$ has been defined in (7.3) and $\gamma$ satisfies $\|\gamma\|_{\infty} \leq K_{\sigma}\left(\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2} \delta^{r^{\prime}}$. To finish the proof it is enough to apply the variation of constants formula.

Now we obtain the refined estimates for $q_{2}$.
Lemma 7.8. Fix values $p_{1}, q_{1}, c_{j \pm 2}$ and $c_{k}$ for $k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{ \pm}$such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{Q}= & \left\{c_{1}, \ldots, c_{j-2}, p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma\right\} \times\left[-\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\left(\ln (1 / \delta)-\widetilde{m}_{\text {hyp }}^{(j)}\right),-\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\left(\ln (1 / \delta)+\widetilde{m}_{\text {hyp }}^{(j)}\right)\right] \\
& \times\left\{c_{j+2}, \ldots, c_{j_{N}}\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

satisfies $\mathcal{Q} \subset \mathcal{U}_{j}$. Consider the flow $\Phi^{t}$ associated to the vector field in (4.14) and define the following map for points in $\mathcal{Q}$ :

$$
F_{\mathrm{hyp}}\left(q_{2}\right)=\Phi_{q_{2}}^{T_{\mathcal{B}_{\mathrm{glob}}^{j}}}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)
$$

Then there exist $\widetilde{K}_{\sigma}>0$ and $D^{(j)}$ satisfying

$$
\widetilde{C}^{(j)} / \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \leq D^{(j)} \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{C}^{(j)}
$$

such that

$$
\left[-D^{(j)} \delta\left(\ln (1 / \delta)-1 / \widetilde{K}_{\sigma}\right),-D^{(j)} \delta\left(\ln (1 / \delta)+1 / \tilde{K}_{\sigma}\right)\right] \subset F_{\mathrm{hyp}}(\mathcal{Q})
$$

Proof. Taking into account the estimates obtained in Lemma 7.5, we write the equation for $q_{2}$ in (4.14) as

$$
\dot{q}_{2}=\zeta_{0}(t) q_{2}+\zeta_{1}(t)
$$

where $\zeta_{0}$ only depends on $p_{2}^{h}$ in (7.3) and $\zeta_{1}$ satisfies $\left\|\zeta_{1}\right\|_{\infty} \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta$. Then the conclusion follows from the variation of constants formula.
We devote the rest of the section to proving Lemma 7.5.
Proof of Lemma 7.5. Throughout the proof, the time $t$ will always satisfy $t \in\left[0, T_{\mathcal{B}}{ }^{j}\right]$ and the norm $\|\cdot\|_{\infty}$ will always refer to the supremum taken over this time interval.

We start by obtaining bounds for the nonneighbor elliptic modes. By (4.14), one can easily see that for $k \in \mathcal{P}_{j}^{ \pm}$,

$$
\frac{d}{d t}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2}=\frac{1}{2}\left(c_{k-1}^{2}+c_{k+1}^{2}\right) \bar{c}_{k}^{2}-\frac{1}{2}\left(\bar{c}_{k-1}^{2}+\bar{c}_{k+1}^{2}\right) c_{k}^{2}
$$

Then, using (7.4), we have

$$
\frac{d}{d t}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2} \leq\left|c_{k}\right|^{2}
$$

and therefore applying Gronwall's estimates we find that for $t \in\left[0, T_{\text {glob }}^{j}\right]$,

$$
\left|\Phi_{c_{k}}^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)\right|^{2} \leq e^{T_{\mathcal{B}_{\mathrm{glob}}^{j}}}\left|c_{k}\right|^{2} \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{ell}, \pm}^{(j)} \delta^{(1-r)} .
$$

Proceeding analogously we deal with the adjacent elliptic mode $c_{j-2}$. Its associated equation is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{d t}\left|c_{j-2}\right|^{2}= & 2 i c_{j-3}^{2} \bar{c}_{j-2}^{2}-2 i \bar{c}_{j-3}^{2} c_{j-2}^{2}-\frac{2 i}{\operatorname{Im} \omega}\left(\omega^{2} p_{1}+\omega q_{1}\right)^{2} \bar{c}_{j-2}^{2} \\
& +\frac{2 i}{\operatorname{Im} \omega}\left(\omega p_{1}+\omega^{2} q_{1}\right)^{2} c_{j-2}^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Taking into account the bounds in (7.4) and also (7.5), we obtain

$$
\frac{d}{d t}\left|c_{j-2}\right|^{2} \leq 5\left|c_{j-2}\right|^{2}
$$

which, by the Gronwall lemma, gives

$$
\left|\Phi_{c_{j-2}}^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)\right|^{2} \leq e^{5 T_{\mathcal{B}_{\mathrm{glob}}^{j}}\left|c_{j-2}\right|^{2} \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \tilde{M}_{\mathrm{adj},-}^{(j)} \widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta . . . . . . .}
$$

Analogously, one can obtain

$$
\left|\Phi_{c_{j+2}}^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)\right|^{2} \leq e^{5 T_{\mathrm{glob}}^{j}\left|c_{j+2}\right|^{2} \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{adj},+}^{(j)} \widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta . . . . . . . . .}
$$

Now we obtain bounds for the hyperbolic modes. We define

$$
\rho_{1}(t)=\left(\Phi_{p_{1}}^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right), \Phi_{q_{1}}^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)\right) .
$$

From (4.11), one can see that $\rho_{1}$ satisfies an equation of the form $\dot{\rho}_{1}=A_{1}(t) \rho_{1}$ where $A_{1}(t)$ is a time dependent matrix (which of course depends on $\Phi_{p_{1}}^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)$ itself). Using (7.4) and (7.5), one can deduce that

$$
\left\|A_{1}\right\|_{\infty} \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma}
$$

Then the fundamental matrix $\Psi$ satisfying $\Psi(0)=$ Id associated to this system satisfies $\|\Psi\|_{\infty} \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma}$. Since $\rho_{1}$ can be just written

$$
\rho_{1}(t)=\Psi(t) \rho_{1}(0),
$$

and by hypothesis $\left|p_{1}(0)\right|,\left|q_{1}(0)\right| \leq \widetilde{M}_{\text {hyp }}^{(j)}\left(\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}$, we deduce that for $t \in\left[0, T_{\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}}\right]$,

$$
\left|\rho_{1}(t)\right| \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{M}_{\mathrm{hyp}}^{(j)}\left(\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}
$$

We finish the proof by obtaining estimates for the ( $p_{2}, q_{2}$ ) components. To this end, let us point out that the equation for $q_{2}$ can be written as

$$
\dot{q}_{2}=a_{1}(t) q_{2}+b_{1}(t),
$$

where $a_{1}(t)$ and $b_{1}(t)$ are functions which depend on $\Phi_{p_{1}}^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)$. Using (7.5) and the bounds just obtained for the nonneighbor and adjacent elliptic modes and for ( $p_{1}, q_{1}$ ) components, one can easily see that

$$
\left\|a_{1}\right\|_{\infty} \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \quad \text { and } \quad\left\|b_{1}\right\|_{\infty} \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma}\left(\widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta\right)^{1 / 2}
$$

Therefore, applying the Gronwall lemma, we can deduce that

$$
\left|\Phi_{q_{2}}^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)\right| \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \widetilde{C}^{(j)} \delta \ln (1 / \delta)
$$

To obtain bounds for $p_{2}$ we define $\xi=p_{2}-p_{2}^{h}$, where $p_{2}^{h}$ is the function defined in (7.3). Using (7.5) and (7.3) we have the a priori bound $\|\xi\|_{\infty} \leq 3$. Therefore, from (4.14) we can deduce an equation for $\xi$ of the form

$$
\dot{\xi}=a_{2}(t) \xi+b_{2}(t)
$$

where the functions $a_{2}$ and $b_{2}$ satisfy

$$
\left\|a_{2}\right\|_{\infty} \leq K_{\sigma} \quad \text { and } \quad\left\|b_{2}\right\|_{\infty} \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \delta^{r^{\prime}}
$$

Then, applying Gronwall's lemma, we obtain $\|\xi\|_{\infty} \leq \widetilde{K}_{\sigma} \delta^{r^{\prime}}$, which implies the estimate for $\Phi_{p_{2}}^{t}\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, \sigma, q_{2}, c\right)-p_{2}^{h}$. This finishes the proof of the lemma.

## Appendix A. Proof of Normal Form Theorem 2

In the proof of Theorem 2, we use a generic constant $C$ which depends on $\eta$. We consider as a change of variables $\Gamma$ the time-one map of the Hamiltonian vector field $X_{F}$, where $F$ is the Hamiltonian

$$
F=\frac{1}{4} \sum_{n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}, n_{4} \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}} F_{n_{1} n_{2} n_{3} n_{4} \alpha_{n_{1}} \bar{\alpha}_{n_{2}} \alpha_{n_{3}} \bar{\alpha}_{n_{4}}}
$$

with coefficients

$$
F_{n_{1} n_{2} n_{3} n_{4}}=\frac{-i}{\left|n_{1}\right|^{2}-\left|n_{2}\right|^{2}+\left|n_{3}\right|^{2}-\left|n_{4}\right|^{2}} \quad \begin{aligned}
& \text { if } n_{1}-n_{2}+n_{3}-n_{4}=0 \\
& \\
& \left|n_{1}\right|^{2}-\left|n_{2}\right|^{2}+\left|n_{3}\right|^{2}-\left|n_{4}\right|^{2} \neq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
F_{n_{1} n_{2} n_{3} n_{4}}=0
$$

The vector field $X_{F}$ is an analytic vector field from $\ell^{1}$ to iself, which is of order 3 at the origin. Indeed, the $a_{n}$ component of $X_{F}$ is given by

$$
\left(X_{F}\right)_{\alpha_{n}}=2 i \partial_{\bar{\alpha}_{n}} F=4 i \sum_{\substack{n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3} \in \mathbb{Z}^{2} \\ n_{1}-n_{2} \\\left|n_{1}\right|^{2}-\left|n_{2}\right|^{2}+\left|n_{3}-n=0\\\right|^{2}-\left|n_{4}\right|^{2} \neq 0}} F_{n_{1} n_{2} n_{3} n} \alpha_{n_{1}} \bar{\alpha}_{n_{2}} \alpha_{n_{3}} .
$$

Since $\left|F_{n_{1} n_{2} n_{3} n}\right| \leq 1$, we can bound the $\ell^{1}$-norm of $X_{F}$ as

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|X_{F}\right\|_{\ell^{1}} & \leq \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\left(X_{F}\right)_{\alpha_{n}}\right| \leq 4 \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}} \sum_{\begin{array}{c}
n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3} \in \mathbb{Z}^{2} \\
n_{1}-n_{2}+n_{3}-n=0 \\
\left|n_{1}\right|^{2}-\left|n_{2}\right|^{2}+\left|n_{3}\right|^{2}-|n|^{2} \neq 0
\end{array}}\left|\alpha_{n_{1}}\right|\left|\alpha_{n_{2}}\right|\left|\alpha_{n_{3}}\right| \\
& \leq 4 \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}} \sum_{\substack{n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3} \in \mathbb{Z}^{2} \\
n_{1}-n_{2}+n_{3}-n=0}}\left|\alpha_{n_{1} \mid}\right|\left|\alpha_{n_{2}}\right|\left|\alpha_{n_{3}}\right| .
\end{aligned}
$$

This last sum is a convolution product of three terms, and therefore, by (3.3),

$$
\left\|X_{F}\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq 4\|\alpha\|_{\ell^{1}}^{3}
$$

Since $X_{F}: \ell^{1} \rightarrow \ell^{1}$ is an analytic vector field which is small in a neighborhood of the origin, the associated flow $\Phi_{F}^{t}$ sends the ball $B(\eta)$ to $B(2 \eta)$ for $t \in[0,1]$ and $\eta>0$ small enough. In particular the change of variables $\Gamma: B(\eta) \rightarrow B(2 \eta)$ is well defined.

Applying the change $\Gamma$ to the Hamiltonian $H$ we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{H} \circ \Gamma & =\left.H \circ \Phi_{F}^{t}\right|_{t=1}=\mathcal{H}+\{\mathcal{H}, F\}+\int_{0}^{1}(1-t)\{\{\mathcal{H}, F\}, F\} \circ \Phi_{F}^{t} d t \\
& =\mathcal{D}+\mathcal{G}+\{\mathcal{D}, F\}+\{\mathcal{G}, F\}+\int_{0}^{1}(1-t)\{\{\mathcal{H}, F\}, F\} \circ \Phi_{F}^{t} d t
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\{\cdot, \cdot\}$ denotes the Poisson bracket with respect to the symplectic form $\Omega=$ $\frac{i}{2} \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}} \alpha_{n} \wedge \bar{\alpha}_{n}$. We define

$$
\mathcal{R}=\{\mathcal{G}, F\}+\int_{0}^{1}(1-t)\{\{\mathcal{H}, F\}, F\} \circ \Phi_{F}^{t} d t
$$

It remains to obtain the desired bounds for $X_{\mathcal{R}}$ and $\Gamma$ and to see that

$$
\mathcal{G}+\{\mathcal{D}, F\}=\widetilde{\mathcal{G}} .
$$

To obtain this last equality, it is enough to use the definition for $F$ to see that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{G}+\{\mathcal{D}, F\} & =\frac{1}{4} \sum_{n_{1}-n_{2}+n_{3}=n_{4}}\left(1-i\left(\left|n_{1}\right|^{2}-\left|n_{2}\right|^{2}+\left|n_{3}\right|^{2}-\left|n_{4}\right|^{2}\right) F_{n_{1} n_{2} n_{3} n_{4}}\right) \alpha_{n_{1}} \bar{\alpha}_{n_{2}} \alpha_{n_{3}} \bar{\alpha}_{n_{4}} \\
& =\frac{1}{4} \sum_{\substack{n_{1}-n_{2}+n_{3}=n_{4} \\
\left|n_{1}\right|^{2}-\left|n_{2}\right|^{2}+\left|n_{3}\right|^{2}=\left|n_{4}\right|^{2}}} \alpha_{n_{1}} \bar{\alpha}_{n_{2}} \alpha_{n_{3}} \bar{\alpha}_{n_{4}}=\widetilde{\mathcal{G}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Now we obtain bounds for $X_{\mathcal{R}}$. We start by bounding $X_{\{\mathcal{G}, F\}}$, the vector field associated to the Hamiltonian $\{\mathcal{G}, F\}$. We need to bound

$$
\left\|X_{\{\mathcal{G}, F\}}\right\|_{\ell^{1}}=2 \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\partial_{\bar{\alpha}_{n}}\{\mathcal{G}, F\}\right| .
$$

We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|X_{\{\mathcal{G}, F\}}\right\|_{\ell} \leq & 2 \sum_{n, m \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\partial_{\bar{\alpha}_{n}}\left(\partial_{\bar{\alpha}_{m}} \mathcal{G} \partial_{\alpha_{m}} F\right)\right|+2 \sum_{n, m \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\partial_{\bar{\alpha}_{n}}\left(\partial_{\alpha_{m}} \mathcal{G} \partial_{\bar{\alpha}_{m}} F\right)\right| \\
\leq & 2 \sum_{n, m \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\partial_{\bar{\alpha}_{n} \bar{\alpha}_{m}} \mathcal{G}\right|\left|\partial_{\alpha_{m}} F\right|+2 \sum_{n, m \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\partial_{\bar{\alpha}_{m}} \mathcal{G}\right|\left|\partial_{\bar{\alpha}_{n} \alpha_{m}} F\right| \\
& +2 \sum_{n, m \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\partial_{\bar{\alpha}_{n} \alpha_{m}} \mathcal{G}\right|\left|\partial_{\bar{\alpha}_{m}} F\right|+2 \sum_{n, m \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\partial_{\alpha_{m}} \mathcal{G}\right|\left|\partial_{\bar{\alpha}_{n} \bar{\alpha}_{m}} F\right| .
\end{aligned}
$$

All the terms can be bounded analogously. As an example, we bound the first one:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n, m \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\partial_{\bar{\alpha}_{n} \bar{\alpha}_{m}} \mathcal{G}\right|\left|\partial_{\alpha_{m}} F\right| & \leq 4 \sum_{n, m \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\sum_{n_{1}+n_{2}=m+n} \alpha_{n_{1}} \alpha_{n_{2}}\right|\left|\sum_{n_{1}-n_{2}+n_{3}=m} \bar{\alpha}_{n_{1}} \alpha_{n_{2}} \bar{\alpha}_{n_{3}}\right| \\
& \leq 4 \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}} \sum_{n_{1}+n_{2}=n}\left|\alpha_{n_{1}}\right|\left|\alpha_{n_{2}}\right| \sum_{m \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}} \sum_{n_{1}-n_{2}+n_{3}=m}\left|\alpha_{n_{1}}\right|\left|\alpha_{n_{2}}\right|\left|\alpha_{n_{3}}\right|,
\end{aligned}
$$

where in the first line we have taken into account that $\left|F_{n_{1} n_{2} n_{3} n_{4}}\right| \leq 1$. Since each sum in the last line is a convolution product, we have

$$
\sum_{n, m \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\partial_{\bar{\alpha}_{n} \bar{\alpha}_{m}} \mathcal{G}\right|\left|\partial_{\alpha_{m}} F\right| \leq C\|\alpha\|_{\ell^{1}}^{5}
$$

Now we bound the other term in $X_{\mathcal{R}}$, which is the vector field $X_{\widehat{\mathcal{R}}}$ associated to

$$
\widehat{\mathcal{R}}=\int_{0}^{1}(1-t)\{\{\mathcal{H}, F\}, F\} \circ \Phi_{F}^{t} d t
$$

Using the fact that $\{\mathcal{D}, F\}=\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}-\mathcal{G}$, one can write $\widehat{\mathcal{R}}=\widehat{\mathcal{R}}_{1}+\widehat{\mathcal{R}}_{2}+\widehat{\mathcal{R}}_{3}$ with

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \widehat{\mathcal{R}}_{1}=\int_{0}^{1}(1-t)\{\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}, F\} \circ \Phi_{F}^{t} d t \\
& \widehat{\mathcal{R}}_{2}=-\int_{0}^{1}(1-t)\{\mathcal{G}, F\} \circ \Phi_{F}^{t} d t \\
& \widehat{\mathcal{R}}_{3}=\int_{0}^{1}(1-t)\{\{\mathcal{G}, F\}, F\} \circ \Phi_{F}^{t} d t
\end{aligned}
$$

To bound them, we first obtain bounds for $\Phi_{F}^{t}$. The flow satisfies

$$
\Phi_{F}^{t}=\mathrm{Id}+\int_{0}^{1} X_{F} \circ \Phi_{F}^{\tau} d \tau
$$

Recalling that $\left\|X_{F}\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq 4\|\alpha\|_{\ell^{1}}^{3}$, one can easily deduce that

$$
\sup _{t \in[0,1]}\left\|\Phi_{F}^{t}-\mathrm{Id}\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C\|\alpha\|_{\ell^{1}}^{3}
$$

In particular, taking $t=1$, we get the desired estimate for $\Gamma=\Phi_{F}^{1}$,

$$
\|\Gamma-\mathrm{Id}\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C\|\alpha\|_{\ell^{1}}^{3}
$$

Finally, to obtain bounds for the $\ell^{1}$-norms of $X_{\widehat{\mathcal{R}}_{j}}$, it is enough to write them as convolution products, as done for $X_{\{\mathcal{G}, F\}}$, and use the estimate for $\Phi_{F}^{t}$. Then one obtains

$$
\left\|X_{\widehat{\mathcal{R}}_{1}}\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C\|\alpha\|^{5}, \quad\left\|X_{\widehat{\mathcal{R}}_{2}}\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C\|\alpha\|^{5}, \quad\left\|X_{\widehat{\mathcal{R}}_{3}}\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C\|\alpha\|^{7}
$$

Thus, we conclude that $\left\|X_{\mathcal{R}}\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C\|\alpha\|^{5}$. This completes the proof.

## Appendix B. Proof of Approximation Theorem 4

We devote this section to proving the Approximation Theorem 4. Even if this proof relies on Gronwall-like estimates as the approximation result in [CKS ${ }^{+}$10] (see Lemma 2.3), it presents significant differences. To prove Theorem 4, we need that for large enough time, most of the mass remains supported in the modes in $\Lambda$. Namely, the spreading of mass to other modes is slow enough so that we can still keep track of the growth of Sobolev norms. To achieve this control, as already mentioned in Section 2.4, we take advantage of two facts:

- Condition $6_{\Lambda}$ imposed on the set $\Lambda$ in Proposition 3.1.
- The precise knowledge we have on $\beta^{\lambda}$ in (3.17) thanks to Theorem 3-bis.

Condition $6_{\Lambda}$ prevents mass from concentrating in some particular modes off $\Lambda$. This could be very harmful because such a mode could alter the Sobolev norm considerably. On the other hand, thanks to Theorem 3-bis we know that each $\beta_{n}^{\lambda}$ with $n \in \Lambda$ is not small for a short period of time ( of order $\mathcal{O}(N)$ ) when the corresponding $b_{j}$ is a hyperbolic mode (see Section 4). For the rest of the time, which is of order $\mathcal{O}\left(N^{2}\right), \beta_{n}^{\lambda}$ is considerably smaller and therefore it cannot spread mass to other modes. These improvements allow us to choose the best possible $\lambda$ to achieve polynomial growth of Sobolev norms.

Now we proceed to prove Theorem 4. Throughout this section, $C$ denotes any positive constant independent of $N$ and $\lambda$. The solution $\beta^{\lambda}$ is expressed in rotating coordinates (see change (3.7)) and $\alpha$ is not. To compare them in a simpler way, we consider equation (3.6) in rotating coordinates. To this end, we use the fact that equation (3.4) also preserves the $\ell^{2}$-norm and therefore we perform the change of coordinates

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha_{n}=g_{n} e^{i\left(G+|n|^{2}\right) t} \tag{B.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $G=-2\|\alpha\|_{\ell^{2}}^{2}$. Then the equation for $g=\left\{g_{n}\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}$ reads

$$
\begin{equation*}
-i \dot{g}_{n}=\mathcal{E}_{n}(g)+\mathcal{J}_{n}(g) \tag{B.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathcal{E}: \ell^{1} \rightarrow \ell^{1}$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{E}_{n}(g)=-\left|g_{n}\right|^{2} g_{n}+\sum_{\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n_{3}\right) \in \mathcal{A}(n)} g_{n_{1}} \bar{g}_{n_{2}} g_{n_{3}} \tag{B.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $\mathcal{A}(n) \subset\left(\mathbb{Z}^{2}\right)^{3}$ defined in (3.8), and $\mathcal{J}: \ell^{1} \rightarrow \ell^{1}$ is the vector field associated to the Hamiltonian

$$
\mathcal{R}^{\prime}(g)=\mathcal{R}\left(\left\{g_{n} e^{i\left(G+|n|^{2}\right) t}\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\right),
$$

where $\mathcal{R}$ is the Hamiltonian introduced in Theorem 2. Therefore,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|\mathcal{J}(g)\|_{\ell^{1}}=\mathcal{O}\left(\|g\|_{\ell^{1}}^{5}\right) \tag{B.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that (B.2) and (3.8) only differ by $\mathcal{J}$, that is, in the fifth degree terms of the equation. Moreover, note that $g(0)=\alpha(0)$ and therefore, by the hypotheses of Theorem 4,

$$
\begin{equation*}
g(0)=\beta^{\lambda}(0) \tag{B.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

To prove that $g$ and $\beta$ are close we define the function $\xi$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\xi_{n}=g_{n}-\beta_{n} \tag{B.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

and we apply refined Gronwall-like estimates to bound its $\ell^{1}$-norm. Thanks to (B.5), we have $\xi(0)=0$. Moreover, from (3.8) and (B.2), one can deduce the equation for $\xi$. It can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{\xi}=\mathcal{Z}^{0}(t)+\mathcal{Z}^{1}(t) \xi+\mathcal{Z}^{2}(\xi, t) \tag{B.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathcal{Z}^{0}(t) & =\mathcal{J}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right)  \tag{B.8}\\
\mathcal{Z}^{1}(t) & =D \mathcal{E}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right)  \tag{B.9}\\
\mathcal{Z}^{2}(\xi, t) & =\mathcal{E}\left(\beta^{\lambda}+\xi\right)-\mathcal{E}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right)-D \mathcal{E}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right) \xi+\mathcal{J}\left(\beta^{\lambda}+\xi\right)-\mathcal{J}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right) \tag{B.10}
\end{align*}
$$

Applying the $\ell^{1}$-norm to (B.7), we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t}\|\xi\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq\left\|\mathcal{Z}^{0}(t)\right\|_{\ell^{1}}+\left\|\mathcal{Z}^{1}(t) \xi\right\|_{\ell^{1}}+\left\|\mathcal{Z}^{2}(\xi, t)\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \tag{B.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

The next three lemmas give estimates for each term on the right hand side of this equation. Their proofs are deferred to the end of this appendix.

Lemma B.1. The function $\mathcal{Z}^{0}$ defined in (B.8) satisfies $\left\|\mathcal{Z}^{0}\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C \lambda^{-5} 2^{5 N}$.
Lemma B.2. The linear operator $\mathcal{Z}^{1}(t)$ satisfies $\left\|\mathcal{Z}^{1}(t) \xi\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}} f_{n}(t)\left|\xi_{n}\right|$, where $f_{n}(t)$ are positive functions satisfying

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{T} f_{n}(t) d t \leq C \gamma N \tag{B.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $T$ is the time given in (3.16) and $\gamma$ is the constant of Theorem 3.
To obtain estimates for $\mathcal{Z}^{2}(\xi, t)$ defined in (B.10), we apply bootstrap.

Assume that for $0<t<T^{*}$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|\xi(t)\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C \lambda^{-3 / 2} 2^{-N} \tag{B.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

A posteriori we will show that the time (3.16) satisfies $0<T<T^{*}$ and therefore the bootstrap assumption holds.

Lemma B.3. Assume that condition (B.13) is satisfied. Then the operator $\mathcal{Z}^{2}(\xi, t)$ satisfies

$$
\left\|\mathcal{Z}^{2}(\xi, t)\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C \lambda^{-5 / 2}\|\xi(t)\|_{\ell^{1}}
$$

By Lemmas B.1-B.3, equation (B.11) implies

$$
\frac{d}{d t}\|\xi\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left(f_{n}(t)+C \lambda^{-5 / 2}\right)\left|\xi_{n}\right|+C \lambda^{-5} 2^{5 N}
$$

To obtain bounds for $\|\xi\|_{\ell^{1}}$ we write this as

$$
\sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}} \frac{d}{d t}\left|\xi_{n}\right| \leq \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left(f_{n}(t)+C \lambda^{-5 / 2}\right)\left|\xi_{n}\right|+C \lambda^{-5} 2^{5 N}
$$

and we apply a Gronwall-like argument for each harmonic of $\xi$. Namely, we consider the change of coordinates

$$
\begin{equation*}
\xi_{n}=\zeta_{n} e^{\int_{0}^{t}\left(f_{n}(s)+C \lambda^{-5 / 2}\right) d s} . \tag{B.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then we obtain

$$
\sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}} e^{\int_{0}^{t}\left(f_{n}(s)+C \lambda^{-5 / 2}\right) d s} \frac{d}{d t}\left|\zeta_{n}\right| \leq C \lambda^{-5} 2^{5 N}
$$

From this equation and taking into account that

$$
f_{n}(t)+C \lambda^{-5 / 2} \geq 0
$$

we obtain

$$
\frac{d}{d t}\|\zeta\|_{\ell^{1}}=\sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}} \frac{d}{d t}\left|\zeta_{n}\right| \leq C \lambda^{-5} 2^{5 N}
$$

Therefore, integrating this equation, taking into account that $\zeta(0)=\xi(0)=0$ and using the bound for $T$ in (3.16) we obtain

$$
\|\zeta\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C \lambda^{-3} 2^{5 N} \gamma N^{2} .
$$

To deduce from this bound the corresponding bound for $\|\xi\|_{\ell^{1}}$ it is enough to use the change (B.14), the estimate (B.12) and the definition of $T$ in (3.16). Then we obtain

$$
\left|\xi_{n}\right| \leq e^{C \gamma N} e^{\lambda^{-5 / 2} T}\left|\zeta_{n}\right| \leq 2 e^{C \gamma N}\left|\zeta_{n}\right|
$$

which implies

$$
\|\xi\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq 2 e^{C \gamma N}\|\zeta\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq 2 e^{C \gamma N} \lambda^{-3} 2^{5 N} \gamma N^{2}
$$

Therefore, using the condition on $\lambda$ from Theorem 4 with any $\kappa>C$ and taking $N$ large enough, we find that for $t \in[0, T]$,

$$
\|\xi\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq \lambda^{-2}
$$

and therefore we can drop the bootstrap assumption (B.13).
Finally, taking into account (B.6) and (B.1) we obtain

$$
\sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\alpha_{n} e^{-i\left(G+|n|^{2}\right) t}-\beta_{n}\right| \leq C \lambda^{-3 / 2}
$$

which is equivalent to statement (3.19) in Theorem 4.
It only remains to prove Lemmas B.1-B.3.
Proof of Lemma B.1. Taking into account (B.4), we have

$$
\left\|\mathcal{Z}^{0}\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C\left\|\beta^{\lambda}\right\|_{\ell^{1}}^{5}
$$

Therefore it only remains to obtain an upper bound for $\left\|\beta^{\lambda}\right\|_{\ell^{1}}$. Taking into account that $\operatorname{supp}\left\{\beta^{\lambda}\right\} \subset \Lambda$, the definition of $\beta^{\lambda}$ in (3.17) and Theorem 3, we have

$$
\left\|\beta^{\lambda}(t)\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq \sum_{n \in \Lambda}\left|\beta_{n}^{\lambda}(t)\right| \leq 2^{N} \lambda^{-1} \sum_{j=1}^{N}\left|b_{j}\left(\lambda^{-2} t\right)\right|
$$

Now it remains to point out that from Theorem 3-bis, we know that at each time all but three components of $b$ are of size $\left|b_{j}\right| \lesssim \delta^{\nu}$ for a certain $v>0$, whereas the other two satisfy $\left|b_{j}\right| \leq 1$. Then, using the definition of $\delta$ in Theorem 3, we obtain

$$
\sum_{j=1}^{N}\left|b_{j}\left(\lambda^{-2} t\right)\right| \leq C\left(1+N \delta^{\nu}\right) \leq C
$$

which implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\beta^{\lambda}(t)\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C 2^{N} \lambda^{-1} \tag{B.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

This finishes the proof of the lemma.
Proof of Lemma B.2. We start by analyzing each component of $\mathcal{Z}^{1}(t) \xi$. To this end, we use the function $\mathcal{E}$ defined in (B.3) to obtain

$$
\left(\mathcal{Z}^{1}(t) \xi\right)_{n}=\sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}} \partial_{\xi_{k}} \mathcal{E}_{n}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right) \xi_{k}+\sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}} \partial_{\bar{\xi}_{k}} \mathcal{E}_{n}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right) \bar{\xi}_{k}
$$

We define

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{n}(t)=\sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\partial_{\xi_{n}} \mathcal{E}_{k}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right)\right|+\sum_{k \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}\left|\partial_{\bar{\xi}_{k}} \mathcal{E}_{n}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right)\right| \tag{B.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

We analyze these functions differently depending on whether $n \in \Lambda$ or $n \notin \Lambda$. We start with the first case.

We fix $n \in \Lambda$ and we want to study which terms on the right hand side of (B.16) are nonzero. Indeed, each of the terms $\left|\partial_{\xi_{n}} \mathcal{E}_{k}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right)\right|$ is of the form $\beta_{n_{1}}^{\lambda} \beta_{n_{2}}^{\lambda}$ with $\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n\right) \in$ $\mathcal{A}(k),\left(n, n_{2}, n_{1}\right) \in \mathcal{A}(k)$ or $n_{1}=n_{2}=n=k$ (the last case arising due to the term $-\left|g_{n}\right|^{2} g_{n}$ in (B.3)). Thus, these terms are nonzero provided $\beta_{n_{1}}^{\lambda} \neq 0$ and $\beta_{n_{2}}^{\lambda} \neq 0$. This condition is satisfied provided $n_{1}, n_{2} \in \Lambda$ (see (3.17)). Thus, we have $n, n_{1}, n_{2} \in \Lambda$. Next, property $1_{\Lambda}$ of the set $\Lambda$ guarantees that $k \in \Lambda$. Properties $2_{\Lambda}$ and $3_{\Lambda}$ imply that $n$ only belongs to two nuclear families. Therefore, it only interacts with seven vertices (recall that it can interact with itself through the term $-\left|g_{n}\right|^{2} g_{n}$ in (B.3)). This implies that for a fixed $n$,

$$
\partial_{\xi_{n}} \mathcal{E}_{k}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right)=0
$$

except for seven values of $k$, which correspond to the parents, children, spouse and sibling of $n$, and $n$ itself. Moreover, for the same reason, each nonzero term $\partial_{\xi_{n}} \mathcal{E}_{k}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right)$ only contains a finite (and independent of $N$ and $n$ ) number of summands of the form $\beta_{n_{1}} \bar{\beta}_{n_{2}}$ with $\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n\right) \in \mathcal{A}(k),\left(n, n_{2}, n_{1}\right) \in \mathcal{A}(k)$ or $n_{1}=n_{2}=n=k$.

Reasoning in the same way, we can obtain analogous results for the terms $\left|\partial_{\bar{\xi}_{k}} \mathcal{E}_{n}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right)\right|$.
From these facts, we can deduce formula (B.12) for $n \in \Lambda$. Indeed, we have seen that $f_{n}$ only involves seven harmonics of $\beta^{\lambda}$ and that it is quadratic in them. Then, recalling the definition of $\beta^{\lambda}$ in (3.17), Theorem 3-bis ensures that $f_{n}(t)$ has size $f_{n} \sim \lambda^{-2}$ for a time interval of order $\lambda^{2} \ln (1 / \delta) \sim \lambda^{2} \gamma N$ (recall that $\delta=e^{-\gamma N}$ ) and has size $f_{n} \sim \lambda^{-2} \delta^{\nu} \sim$ $\lambda^{-2} e^{-\gamma \nu N}$ for the rest of the time, that is, for a time interval of order $\lambda^{2} N \ln (1 / \delta) \sim$ $\lambda^{2} \gamma N^{2}$. Therefore,

$$
\int_{0}^{T} f_{n}(t) d t \leq C\left(N+N^{2} e^{-\gamma \nu N}\right) \leq C \gamma N .
$$

This finishes the proof for $n \in \Lambda$.
Now we need analogous results for $n \notin \Lambda$. We need to see which terms of $\left|\partial_{\xi_{n}} \mathcal{E}_{k}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right)\right|$ that are of the form $\beta_{n_{1}}^{\lambda} \beta_{n_{2}}^{\lambda}$ are nonzero. We know that they are nonzero provided $\left(n_{1}, n_{2}, n\right) \in \mathcal{A}(k)$ or $\left(n, n_{2}, n_{1}\right) \in \mathcal{A}(k)$ and $n_{1}, n_{2} \in \Lambda$. Note that now the case $n_{1}=n_{2}=n=k$ is excluded since $n \notin \Lambda$ and $n_{1}, n_{2} \in \Lambda$. Since $n \notin \Lambda$ and $n_{1}, n_{2} \in \Lambda$, property $1_{\Lambda}$ implies that $k \notin \Lambda$. Then, property $6_{\Lambda}$ guarantees that there are at most two rectangles with two vertices in $\Lambda$ and two off $\Lambda$. Therefore,

$$
\partial_{\xi_{n}} \mathcal{E}_{k}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right)=0
$$

except for three values of $k$, which correspond to $n$ itself and the other vertex not belonging to $\Lambda$ of each of these two rectangles. Reasoning as before, each nonzero term $\partial_{\xi_{n}} \mathcal{E}_{k}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right)$ only contains a finite (and independent of $N$ and $n$ ) number of summands of the form $\beta_{n_{1}} \bar{\beta}_{n_{2}}$ with $n_{1}, n_{2} \in \Lambda$. Then, reasoning as in the previous case, we obtain

$$
\int_{0}^{T} f_{n}(t) d t \leq C \gamma N
$$

This finishes the proof of the lemma.


Fig. 4. Rectangles

Proof of Lemma B.3. To prove Lemma B.3, we split $\mathcal{Z}^{2}$ in (B.10) as $\mathcal{Z}^{2}=\mathcal{Z}_{1}^{2}+\mathcal{Z}_{2}^{2}$ with

$$
\mathcal{Z}_{1}^{2}(t)=\mathcal{E}\left(\beta^{\lambda}+\xi\right)-\mathcal{E}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right)-D \mathcal{E}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right) \xi, \quad \mathcal{Z}_{2}^{2}(t)=\mathcal{J}\left(\beta^{\lambda}+\xi\right)-\mathcal{J}\left(\beta^{\lambda}\right)
$$

Using the definition of $\mathcal{E}$ in (B.3), it can be easily seen that

$$
\left\|\mathcal{Z}_{1}^{2}\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C\left(\left\|\beta^{\lambda}\right\|_{\ell^{1}}\|\xi\|_{\ell^{1}}^{2}+\|\xi\|_{\ell^{1}}^{3}\right)
$$

Then, using the bound for $\left\|\beta^{\lambda}\right\|_{\ell^{1}}$ obtained in (B.15) and the bootstrap assumption (B.13), we obtain

$$
\left\|\mathcal{Z}_{1}^{2}\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C \lambda^{-5 / 2}\|\xi\|_{\ell^{1}}
$$

We proceed analogously for $\mathcal{Z}_{2}^{2}$. Indeed,

$$
\left\|\mathcal{Z}_{2}^{2}\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C \sum_{k=1}^{5}\left\|\beta^{\lambda}\right\|_{\ell^{1}}^{5-k}\|\xi\|_{\ell^{1}}^{k}
$$

and applying (B.15) and (B.13) again, we obtain

$$
\left\|\mathcal{Z}_{2}^{2}\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C \lambda^{-5 / 2}\|\xi\|_{\ell^{1}}
$$

Thus, we conclude that $\left\|\mathcal{Z}^{2}\right\|_{\ell^{1}} \leq C \lambda^{-5 / 2}\|\xi\|_{\ell^{1}}$.

## Appendix C. A result for small initial Sobolev norm

In Theorem 1 we cannot ensure that the initial Sobolev norm $\|u(0)\|_{H^{s}}$ is arbitrarily small, as is done in $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$. One could impose this condition at the expense of obtaining a worse estimate for the time $T$. In this appendix we state an analog of Theorem 1 under the assumption that $\|u(0)\|_{H^{s}}$ is arbitrarily small.

Theorem 7. Let $s>1$. Then there exists $c>0$ with the following property: For any small $\mu \ll 1$ and large $\mathcal{A} \gg 1$ there exists a global solution $u(t, x)$ of (1.1) and a time $T$ satisfying

$$
0<T \leq(\mathcal{A} / \mu)^{c \ln (\mathcal{A} / \mu)}
$$

such that

$$
\|u(T)\|_{H^{s}} \geq \mathcal{A} \quad \text { and } \quad\|u(0)\|_{H^{s}} \leq \mu
$$

Remark C.1. The combination of Theorems 1 and 7 covers all regimes studied in $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$.

The proof of this theorem follows the same lines as the proof of Theorem 1 explained in Section 3, on taking $\mathcal{K}=\mathcal{A} / \mu$. The only difference is the choice of the parameter $\lambda$ to ensure

$$
\|u(0)\|_{H^{s}} \leq \mu
$$

Indeed, as explained in Section 3, we have

$$
\|u(0)\|_{H^{s}}^{2} \lesssim \lambda^{-2} S_{3},
$$

and therefore one needs to choose $\lambda$ such that $\lambda^{-2} S_{3} \sim \mu$. By Proposition 3.1, the constant $S_{3}$, defined in (3.20), depends on $N$. Nevertheless, in that theorem there is no quantitative estimate of this dependence. We will compute it here and show how it affects the estimates for the diffusion time $T$.

We will show that there is a choice of the set $\Lambda$ with $S_{3}$ from (3.20) satisfying

$$
\begin{equation*}
S_{3} \lesssim B^{N^{2}} \tag{C.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

for a certain $B>0$ independent of $N$, e.g. $B=60^{4}$ applies.
First, using this estimate we derive the time estimate in Theorem 7 from (C.1). Later we prove (C.1). We choose

$$
\lambda \sim \frac{1}{\mu} B^{N^{2}}
$$

so that $\lambda^{-2} S_{3} \sim \mu$. Then $N \sim \ln \mathcal{K}$ by Proposition 3.1. Taking $\mathcal{K}=\mathcal{A} / \mu$, we know that there exists a constant $c>0$ such that

$$
\lambda \lesssim(\mathcal{A} / \mu)^{c \ln (\mathcal{A} / \mu)}
$$

and therefore using formula (3.16) we obtain the estimate for the time.
Now we prove (C.1). To this end we use the construction of the set $\Lambda$ in $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$. Recall that the authors first construct $\Lambda$ inside the Gaussian rationals $\mathbb{Q}[i]$ and then multiplying by the least common multiple they map it to the Gaussian integers $\mathbb{Z}[i]$, which is identified with $\mathbb{Z}^{2}$. Now, we want to place the points in $\mathbb{Q}[i]$ keeping track of the denominators. This gives us the size of the harmonics we are dealing with, and therefore the size of $S_{3}$.

The placement of the modes in $\mathbb{Q}[i]$ is done inductively generation by generation. Namely, we first place $\Lambda_{1}$, then place $\Lambda_{2}$ checking that conditions $1_{\Lambda}-6_{\Lambda}$ are satisfied,


Fig. 5. Proper children's choice.
then place $\Lambda_{3}$ and so on. Note that the modes have to be close to the configuration called prototype embedding in $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right.$, Sect. 4$]$, since then we can ensure that (3.9) is satisfied.

First generation: To place the first generation we consider a grid of points in $\mathbb{Q}[i]$ with denominator $60^{N}$. It is clear that we can place $\Lambda_{1}$ in this grid with the points close to the first generation of the prototype embedding in [CKS $\left.{ }^{+} 10\right]$. This can be done so that the (co)tangent of a slope between any two points in $\Lambda_{1}$ has numerator and denominator bounded by $Q_{1}:=60^{N}$.

Second generation: The set $\Lambda_{1}$ is divided into pairs of modes which are the parents of different nuclear families. For each of these pairs, we need to place a pair of points of $\Lambda_{2}$ forming a rectangle with the other pair. This new pair is going to be the children of the nuclear family. To place it we consider the circle $C$ having as a diameter the segment joining the relevant pair in $\Lambda_{1}$. Then the children have to be placed

- at the endpoints of a different diameter of $C$, and
- they should belong to $\mathbb{Q}[i]$, and
- conditions $1_{\Lambda}-6_{\Lambda}$ should be satisfied.

To see that the children belong to $\mathbb{Q}[i]$, we have to consider a diameter making a Pythagorean angle with the previous diameter, that is, an angle $\theta$ such that $e^{i \theta} \in \mathbb{Q}[i]$ (see Figure 5).

Let $n=[\sqrt{R / 2}]$ be the integer part of $\sqrt{R / 2}$. The number of $\theta$ 's whose tangent is rational with numerator and denominator bounded by $R$ is bounded below by $\sqrt{R / 2}$. To see this, notice that any triple of the form $a=m^{2}-n^{2}, b=2 m n, c=m^{2}+n^{2}$ with $m<n$ is Pythagorean. So there are $n-1$ values for $m$ giving a Pythagorean triple.

Conditions $1_{\Lambda}-6_{\Lambda}$ are satisfied provided the modes in $\Lambda_{2}$ are not placed in certain points of the circle $C$. The number of those points is of order smaller than $60^{N}$. Indeed:

- We have to exclude the points of the previous generation ( $2^{N}$ points).
- We have to exclude the points of $\Lambda_{2}$ which have already been placed (at most $2^{N}$ ).
- To avoid the existence of more rectangles besides the nuclear families, we proceed as follows. We consider
- all the points already placed,
- all the lines perpendicular to lines containing two of these points and passing through one of them,
- all the circles having as a diameter the segment between two points already placed (see Figure 5).

Denote by $\mathcal{L}$ the set of these lines and by $\mathcal{C}$ the set of these circles. The cardinality $|\mathcal{L} \cup \mathcal{C}|$ is at most of order $5^{N}$. Then, we have to exclude all the intersections between any object in $\mathcal{L} \cup \mathcal{C}$ with the circle $C$.

- To ensure that condition $6_{\Lambda}$ is satisfied, we consider the set $\mathcal{P}$ of intersection points between any two objects in $\mathcal{L} \cup \mathcal{C}$. It is easy to see that $|\mathcal{P}|$ is of order at most $25^{N}$. Consider the sets
- $\mathcal{L}^{\prime}$ containing the lines which are perpendicular to a line containing a point in $\mathcal{P}$ and a point of $\Lambda$ already placed, and contain one of these two points,
$-\mathcal{C}^{\prime}$ containing the circles having as a diameter a segment joining a point in $\mathcal{P}$ to a point of $\Lambda$ already placed.
The cardinality $\left|\mathcal{L}^{\prime} \cup \mathcal{C}^{\prime}\right|$ is at most of order $60^{N}$. Then, we have to exclude also the intersections between elements in $\mathcal{L} \cup \mathcal{C}$ and $C$. This excludes triple intersections between two objects (either lines or circles) created by the already placed points and an object created by the just placed point. Similarly, one has two exclude triple intersections between one old and two new objects and between three new objects (all created when placing one point). This is explained in more detail in [GHKP14].

We can place the children of the nuclear family at rational points of the circle $C$ away from the ones just mentioned. To estimate their denominator we apply our estimate on the number of Pythagorean triples. The number of $\theta$ 's with slopes whose tangent is given by a rational whose numerator and denominator is bounded by $R$ is lower bounded by $\sqrt{R / 2}-1$. Thus, we can choose $R=60^{2 N}$. The formula $\tan (\alpha+\beta)=(\tan \alpha+\tan \beta) /(1+$ $\tan \alpha \tan \beta$ ) implies that $Q_{2} \leq 2 \cdot 60^{2 N} Q_{1}$. Thus, denominators and numerators in $\Lambda_{1} \cup \Lambda_{2}$ are upper bounded by $Q_{2}$. This grid is accurate enough to place the pairs of $\Lambda_{2}$ in the corresponding circles. Iteratively, we can place the following generations, refining the grid at each step by dealing with Gaussian rationals whose (co)tangent has numerator and denominator bounded by $60^{3 j N}$ at the $j$ th generation. Therefore, after placing the $N$ generations and mapping the set $\Lambda$ from $\mathbb{Q}[i]$ to $\mathbb{Z}[i]$ we find that all the modes $n \in \Lambda$ satisfy

$$
|n| \lesssim 60^{3 N^{2}}
$$

This procedure can be done so that the final configuration of modes is close to the prototype embedding in $\left[\mathrm{CKS}^{+} 10\right]$ to ensure that condition (3.9) is satisfied. Finally, to obtain the estimate (C.1), it is enough to take any $B \geq 60^{4}$.

## Appendix D. Notation

- $\mathcal{K}$ - growth of the Sobolev norm of the solution $\|u(t)\|_{H^{s}}$ from Theorem 1 .
- $s$ - index of the Sobolev space.
- $\mathcal{H}$ - the Hamiltonian of (1.1), defined in (3.2).
- $\mathcal{D}$ - quadratic part of the Hamiltonian $\mathcal{H}$ defined in (3.2).
- $\mathcal{G}$ - quartic part of the Hamiltonian $\mathcal{H}$ defined in (3.2).
- $\mathcal{M}$ - abusing notation, mass of both the solutions of the (1.1) and of the Toy Model (3.12).
- $\left\{a_{n}(t)\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}$ — Fourier coefficients of the solutions of (1.1) or, equivalently, solution of the system $\dot{a}_{n}=2 i \partial_{\overline{a_{n}}} \mathcal{H}$.
- $\underset{\sim}{\Gamma}$ - normal form change for the Hamiltonian (3.2). It is given in Theorem 2.
- $\widetilde{\mathcal{G}}$ - resonant terms of $\mathcal{G}$.
- $\mathcal{R}$ - remainder (of degree 5) of the Hamiltonian $\mathcal{H}$ after taking one step of normal form, that is, the remainder of the Hamiltonian $\mathcal{H} \circ \Gamma$.
- $\left\{\alpha_{n}(t)\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}$ - solutions of the normalized Hamiltonian $\mathcal{H} \circ \Gamma$, given in Theorem 2.
- $\mathcal{A}_{0}(n) \subset\left(\mathbb{Z}^{2}\right)^{3}$ - collection of the resonance convolutions defined in (3.5).
- $\left\{\beta_{n}(t)\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}$ - rotated Fourier coefficients, $\beta_{n}=\alpha_{n} e^{-i\left(G+|n|^{2}\right) t}$. They satisfy (3.8).
- $\mathcal{A}(n) \subset\left(\mathbb{Z}^{2}\right)^{3}$ - collection of reduced resonance convolutions defined after (3.8).
- $N-4$ - number of energy cascades.
- $\Lambda \subset \mathbb{Z}^{2}$ - essential Fourier coefficients given as a disjoint union of $N$ pairwise disjoint generations: $\Lambda=\Lambda_{1} \cup \cdots \cup \Lambda_{N}$. See Proposition 3.1 and preceding discussion.
- $\left\{b_{j}(t)\right\}_{j=1}^{N}$ - solution to the Toy Model (3.12).
- $h(b)$ - Hamiltonian of the Toy Model, given in (3.13).
- $\mathbb{T}_{j}$ - periodic orbits of the Toy Model (3.12).
- $\left\{c_{k}^{(j)}\right\}_{k \neq j}$ - coordinates adapted to the periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{j}$ after symplectic reduction, given in Section 4.1.
- $\left(p_{1}, q_{1}, p_{2}, q_{2}\right)$ - hyperbolic variables adapted to the periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{j}$ after diagonalization, given in Section 4.1.
- $\mathcal{Z}_{\text {hyp }, *}, \mathcal{Z}_{\ell, *}, \mathcal{Z}_{\text {mix }, *}$ - types of remainder terms of the original Hamiltonian $H$ after symplectic reduction and diagonalization near the periodic orbit $\mathbb{T}_{j}$. Subscript means hyperbolic, elliptic and mixed remainder respectively (see Lemma 4.1).
- $\Sigma_{j}^{\text {in }}$ — transversal section to the stable manifold of $\mathbb{T}_{j}$, defined in (4.26).
- $\Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}$ - transversal section to the unstable manifold of $\mathbb{T}_{j}$, defined in (4.34).
- $\mathcal{B}^{j}$ - map from $\Sigma_{j}^{\mathrm{in}}$ to $\Sigma_{j+1}^{\mathrm{in}}$ given by the flow of the Toy Model (3.12) (Section 4).
- $\mathcal{B}_{\text {loc }}^{j}$ — local map from $\Sigma_{j}^{\text {in }}$ to $\Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}$ given by the flow of (3.12), defined in (4.35).
- $\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}$ - global map from $\Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}$ to $\Sigma_{j+1}^{\text {in }}$ given by the flow (3.12), defined in (4.36).
- $a=\mathcal{O}(b)$ means $|a|<K b$ for some $K$ independent of $\delta, \sigma, N, j$.
- $a=\mathcal{O}_{\sigma}(b)$ means $|a|<K b$ for some $K$ independent of $\delta, N, j$.
- $\Psi_{\text {hyp }}$ - the change of coordinates for the hyperbolic Toy Model (see Lemma 5.1).
- $\Psi$ - the change of coordinates for the full Toy Model (see Lemma 6.1).
- $R_{\mathrm{hyp}, *}, R_{\mathrm{mix}, *}, \mathcal{Z}_{\ell, *}$ - collection of remainder terms for the Full Toy Model after normal form transformation $\Psi$ (see Lemma 6.1).
- $\mathcal{V}_{j} \subset \Sigma_{j}^{\mathrm{in}}$ — an open subset contained in the domain of definition of $\mathcal{B}_{\text {loc }}^{j}$ so that $\mathcal{B}_{\text {loc }}^{j}\left(\mathcal{V}_{j}\right) \subset \mathcal{U}_{j}$.
- $\mathcal{U}_{j} \subset \Sigma_{j}^{\text {out }}$ - an open subset contained in the domain of definition of $\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}$ so that $\mathcal{B}_{\text {glob }}^{j}\left(\mathcal{U}_{j}\right) \subset \mathcal{V}_{j+1}$.
- $\mathcal{N}_{j}^{ \pm}$—initial conditions inside $\Sigma_{j}^{\text {in }}$ whose orbits under the flow $\Phi^{t}$ have the cancelation property (see Lemma 5.2).
- $\mathcal{W}_{j}$ - an auxiliary set in the ( $p, q, c$ )-space (see Corollary 7.2).
- $g_{\mathcal{I}_{j}}\left(p_{2}, q_{2}, \sigma, \delta\right)$ - the cancelation function, defined in (6.5) and used in the definition of $\mathcal{N}_{j}^{ \pm}$.
- $T_{0}$ - time of evolution of the Toy Model in Theorem 3.
- $\gamma$ - constant which gives the relation between $\delta$ and $N$.
- $\mathbb{K}$ - constant from the upper bound on time in Theorem 3.
- $\lambda$ - rescaling parameter (see (3.15)).
- $\kappa$ - constant which gives the relation between $\lambda$ and $N$.
- $T$ - time of evolution after rescaling (see (3.16)).
- $\left\{b_{j}^{\lambda}(t)\right\}_{j=1}^{N}$ — rescaled solution to the Toy Model, given in (3.15).
- $\left\{\beta_{n}^{\lambda}(t)\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{Z}^{2}}$ - the lift of the above solution to the Toy Model to an approximate solution to (3.8).

Acknowledgements. The authors would like to thank Terence Tao for pointing out an incorrect choice of norms in the original statement of Theorem 1 in an earlier version of the preprint. We thank Jim Colliander for providing several interesting references. A. Simon gave a detailed reading to the paper which improved the exposition. We would like to specially thank E. Haus and M. Procesi for pointing out a number of additional cases related to the verification of the condition $\Lambda_{6}$.

The authors warmly thank the Fields Institute and the Institute for Advanced Study for their hospitality, stimulating atmosphere, and support. The first author is partially supported by the Spanish MCyT/FEDER grant MTM2009-06973 and the Catalan SGR grant 2009SGR859. The second author is partially supported by NSF grant DMS-0701271.

## References

[Bam97] Bambusi, D.: Long time stability of some small amplitude solutions in nonlinear Schrödinger equations. Comm. Math. Phys. 189, 205-226 (1997) Zbl 0895.35095 MR 1478536
[Bam99] Bambusi, D.: Nekhoroshev theorem for small amplitude solutions in nonlinear Schrödinger equations. Math. Z. 230, 345-387 (1999) Zbl 0928.35160 MR 1676714
[Bam03] Bambusi, D.: Birkhoff normal form for some nonlinear PDEs. Comm. Math. Phys. 234, 253-285 (2003) Zbl 1032.37051 MR 1962462
[BG06] Bambusi, D., Grébert, B.: Birkhoff normal form for partial differential equations with tame modulus. Duke Math. J. 135, 507-567 (2006) Zbl 1110.37057 MR 2272975
[Ber07] Berti, M.: Nonlinear Oscillations of Hamiltonian PDEs. Progr. Nonlinear Differential Equations Appl. 74, Birkhäuser Boston, Boston, MA (2007) Zbl 1146.35002 MR 2345400
[BB11] Berti, M., Biasco, L.: Branching of Cantor manifolds of elliptic tori and applications to PDEs. Comm. Math. Phys. 305, 741-796 (2011) Zbl 1230.37092 MR 2819413
[Bou93] Bourgain, J.: Fourier transform restriction phenomena for certain lattice subsets and application to nonlinear evolution equations. I. Schrödinger equations. Geom. Funct. Anal. 3, 107-156 (1993) Zbl 0787.35097 MR 1209299
[Bou96] Bourgain, J.: On the growth in time of higher Sobolev norms of smooth solutions of Hamiltonian PDE. Int. Math. Res. Notices 1996, 277-304 Zbl 0934.35166 MR 1386079
[Bou98] Bourgain, J.: Quasi-periodic solutions of Hamiltonian perturbations of 2D linear Schrödinger equations. Ann. of Math. (2) 148, 363-439 (1998) Zbl 0928.35161 MR 1668547
[Bou00a] Bourgain, J.: On diffusion in high-dimensional Hamiltonian systems and PDE. J. Anal. Math. 80, 1-35 (2000) Zbl 0964.35143 MR 1771522
[Bou00b] Bourgain, J.: Problems in Hamiltonian PDE's. In: GAFA 2000 (Tel Aviv, 1999), Geom. Funct. Anal., Special Volume, Part I, 32-56 (2000) Zbl 1050.35016 MR 1826248
[Bou04] Bourgain, J.: Remarks on stability and diffusion in high-dimensional Hamiltonian systems and partial differential equations. Ergodic Theory Dynam. Systems 24, 13311357 (2004) Zbl 1087.37056 MR 2104588
[BK92] Bronsteĭn, I. U., Kopanskiĭ, A. Ya.: Finitely smooth normal forms of vector fields in the vicinity of a rest point. In: Global Analysis-Studies and Applications, V, Lecture Notes in Math. 1520, Springer, Berlin, 157-172 (1992) MR 1178279
[BK94] Bronsteǐn, I. U., Kopanskiǐ, A. Ya.: Smooth Invariant Manifolds and Normal Forms. World Sci., River Edge, NJ (1994) Zbl 0974.34001 MR 1337026
[CE12] Carles, R., Faou, E.: Energy cascade for NLS on $\mathbb{T}^{d}$. Discrete Contin. Dynam. Systems 32, 2063-2077 (2012) Zbl 1238.35144 MR 2885798
[CW10] Catoire, F., Wang, W.-M.: Bounds on Sobolev norms for the defocusing nonlinear Schrödinger equation on general flat tori. Comm. Pure Appl. Anal. 9, 483-491 (2010) Zbl 1189.35301 MR 2600446
[CDKS01] Colliander, J. E., Delort, J.-M., Kenig, C. E., Staffilani, G.: Bilinear estimates and applications to 2D NLS. Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 353, 3307-3325 (2001) Zbl 0970.35142 MR 1828607
[CKS ${ }^{+}$10] Colliander, J., Keel, M., Staffilani, G., Takaoka, H., Tao, T.: Transfer of energy to high frequencies in the cubic defocusing nonlinear Schrödinger equation. Invent. Math. 181, 39-113 (2010) Zbl 1197.35265 MR 2651381
[CKO12] Colliander, J., Kwon, S., Oh, T.: A remark on normal forms and the upside-down Imethod for periodic NLS: growth of higher Sobolev norms. J. Anal. Math. 118, 55-82 (2012) Zbl 06186934 MR 2993022
[CW93] Craig, W., Wayne, C. E.: Newton's method and periodic solutions of nonlinear wave equations. Comm. Pure Appl. Math. 46, 1409-1498 (1993) Zbl 0794.35104 MR 1239318
[EK10] Eliasson, L. H., Kuksin, S. B.: KAM for the nonlinear Schrödinger equation. Ann. of Math. (2) 172, 371-435 (2010) Zbl 1201.35177 MR 2680422
[Fen77] Fenichel, N.: Asymptotic stability with rate conditions. II. Indiana Univ. Math. J. 26, 81-93 (1977) Zbl 0365.58012 MR 0426056
[Fen74] Fenichel, N.: Asymptotic stability with rate conditions. Indiana Univ. Math. J. 23, 1109-1137 (1973/74) Zbl 0284.58008 MR 0339276
[GG10] Gérard, P., Grellier, S.: The cubic Szegő equation. Ann. Sci. École Norm. Sup. (4) 43, 761-810 (2010) Zbl 1228.35225 MR 2721876
[GIP09] Grébert, B., Imekraz, R., Paturel, E.: Normal forms for semilinear quantum harmonic oscillators. Comm. Math. Phys. 291, 763-798 (2009) Zbl 1185.81073 MR 2534791
[GKP12] Grébert, B., Kappeler, T., Pöschel, J.: Normal form theory for the NLS equation. arXiv:0907.39381 (2012)
[GHKP14] Guardia, M., Haus, E., Kaloshin, V., Procesi, M.: Some remarks on the no spreading condition. http://www.math.umd.edu/ vkaloshi/ (2014)
[Han11] Hani, Z.: Global and dynamical aspects of nonlinear Schrödinger equations on compact manifolds. Ph.D. thesis UCLA (2011) MR 2995980
[Han12] Hani, Z.: Long-time instability and unbounded Sobolev orbits for some periodic nonlinear Schrödinger equations. Arch. Ration. Mech. Anal. 211, 929-964 (2014) Zbl 1293.35298 MR 3158811
[HPS77] Hirsch, M. W., Pugh, C. C., Shub, M.: Invariant Manifolds, Lecture Notes in Math. 583, Springer, Berlin (1977) Zbl 0355.58009 MR 0501173
[KLS11] Kaloshin, V., Levi, M., Saprykina, M.: Arnold diffusion in a pendulum lattice. Comm. Pure Appl. Math. 67, 748-775 (2014) MR 3179666
[KP03] Kappeler, T., Pöschel, J.: KdV \& KAM. Springer, Berlin (2003) Zbl 1032.37001 MR 1997070
[Kuk93] Kuksin, S. B.: Nearly Integrable Infinite-Dimensional Hamiltonian Systems. Lecture Notes in Math. 1556, Springer, Berlin (1993) Zbl 0784.58028 MR 1290785
[Kuk95] Kuksin, S. B.: On squeezing and flow of energy for nonlinear wave equations. Geom. Funct. Anal. 5, 668-701 (1995) Zbl 0834.35086 MR 1345018
[Kuk96] Kuksin, S.: Growth and oscillations of solutions of nonlinear Schrödinger equation. Comm. Math. Phys. 178, 265-280 (1996) Zbl 0862.35112 MR 1389904
[Kuk97a] Kuksin, S. B.: On turbulence in nonlinear Schrödinger equations. Geom. Funct. Anal. 7, 783-822 (1997) Zbl 0912.35143 MR 1465602
[Kuk97b] Kuksin, S. B.: Oscillations in space-periodic nonlinear Schrödinger equations. Geom. Funct. Anal. 7, 338-363 (1997) Zbl 0874.35113 MR 1445390
[Kuk99] Kuksin, S. B.: Spectral properties of solutions for nonlinear PDEs in the turbulent regime. Geom. Funct. Anal. 9, 141-184 (1999) Zbl 0929.35145 MR 1675893
[KP96] Kuksin, S., Pöschel, J.: Invariant Cantor manifolds of quasi-periodic oscillations for a nonlinear Schrödinger equation. Ann. of Math. (2) 143, 149-179 (1996) Zbl 0847.35130 MR 1370761
[Poc11] Pocovnicu, O.: Explicit formula for the solution of the Szegö equation on the real line and applications. Discrete Contin. Dynam. Systems 31, 607-649 (2011) Zbl 1235.35263 MR 2825631
[Poc13] Pocovnicu, O.: First and second order approximations for a nonlinear wave equation. J. Dynam. Differential Equations 25, 305-333 (2013) Zbl 1270.65060 MR 3054639
[PP12] Procesi, C., Procesi, M.: Normal form for the Schrödinger equation with analytic nonlinearities. Comm. Math. Phys. 312, 501-557 (2012) Zbl 1277.35318 MR 2917174
[Rab78] Rabinowitz, P. H.: Free vibrations for a semilinear wave equation. Comm. Pure Appl. Math. 31, 31-68 (1978) Zbl 0341.35051 MR 0470378
[Šil67] Šil'nikov, L. P.: On a problem of Poincaré-Birkhoff. Mat. Sb. (N.S.) 74(116), 378-397 (1967) (in Russian) Zbl 0244.34033 MR 0232999
[Soh11a] Sohinger, V.: Bounds on the growth of high Sobolev norms of solutions to nonlinear Schrödinger equations on $S^{1}$. Differential Integral Equations 24, 653-718 (2011) Zbl 1249.35310 MR 2830703
[Soh11b] Sohinger, V.: Bounds on the growth of high Sobolev norms of solutions to nonlinear Schrödinger equations on $\mathbb{R}$. Indiana Univ. Math. J. 60, 1487-1516 (2011) Zbl 1254.35212 MR 2996998
[Soh12] Sohinger, V.: Bounds on the growth of high Sobolev norms of solutions to 2D Hartree equations. Discrete Contin. Dynam. Systems 32, 3733-3771 (2012) Zbl 1247.35116 MR 2945837
[Sta97a] Staffilani, G.: On the growth of high Sobolev norms of solutions for KDv and Schrödinger equations. Duke Math. J. 86, 109-42 (1997) Zbl 0874.35114 MR 1427847
[Sta97b] Staffilani, G.: Quadratic forms for a 2-D semilinear Schrödinger equation. Duke Math. J. 86, 79-107 (1997) Zbl 0872.35104 MR 1427846
[Way90] Wayne, C. E.: Periodic and quasi-periodic solutions of nonlinear wave equations via KAM theory. Comm. Math. Phys. 127, 479-528 (1990) Zbl 0708.35087 MR 1040892
[ZS71] Zakharov, V. E., Shabat, A. B.: Exact theory of two-dimensional self-focusing and onedimensional self-modulation of waves in nonlinear media. Zh. Eksper. Teoret. Fiz. 61, 118-134 (1971) (in Russian) MR 0406174
[Zho08] Zhong, S.: The growth in time of higher Sobolev norms of solutions to Schrödinger equations on compact Riemannian manifolds. J. Differential Equations 245, 359-376 (2008) Zbl 1143.58012 MR 2428002


[^0]:    1 As Terence Tao pointed out to us, our solutions have small $L^{2}$-norm, but not $H^{s}$-norm.

[^1]:    2 To be more precise, near each saddle, the elliptic directions remain almost constant and, since they will be taken small enough, it turns out they do not have much influence on the dynamics of hyperbolic components. Thus, to simplify the exposition, we set the elliptic modes to zero and study how the hyperbolic ones evolve. This implies that we only need to study three modes $b_{j-1}, b_{j}$ and $b_{j+1}$. This analysis is performed in Section 5 in great detail.

[^2]:    ${ }^{3}$ As pointed out to us by Terence Tao.

[^3]:    ${ }^{4}$ For a bound on the degree of the polynomial see [BK92, Theorem 3, p. 169]. We just use the fact that $R_{\text {hyp }}$ is a polynomial and thus has some finite degree.

